

Learn Korean Ep. 1: How to say "Have to~" in Korean

여러분 (this means "everyone"), welcome to the wonderful language of Korean! Actually, if you're reading this it probably means you've already been learning the Korean language, or at least learned 한글 ("Hangul," the Korean alphabet) as well as a few grammar points, and are looking for ways to improve your Korean further. I'm here to help! I've studied Korean the hard way – by studying it hard, and for a long time! And I know what parts can become obstacles for Korean learners. 그럼, 시작할까요? ("Well then, shall we start?")

Today's lesson will cover how to say the following:

- "Have to~" (As in, "I have to do something.")
- "Need to~" (As in, "I need to do something.")
- "Must~" (As in, "I must do something.")

Let's go over each of these concepts one at a time.

"Need to~" or "Have to~" verb stem + (아/어/etc) + 야 되다

This form can either mean "need to~" or "have to~." Although "need to~" and "have to~" have a different feeling in English, there's no need to distinguish between the two in Korean.

What is a verb stem? A verb stem is just a verb, minus the "다" at the end. The verb stem of 먹다, "to eat," is just "먹," and the verb stem of "놀다," "to hang out" or "to play," is just "놀." Simple, huh!

What does the middle part, "(아/어/etc)" mean? The middle part is determined when conjugating the 요 form of a verb (e.g. 먹다⇒먹어요, 놀다⇒놀아요). That middle part that's created when conjugating the 요 form is what I am referring to here – it's essentially the 요 form, minus the 요. If you don't already know how to conjugate the 요 form, don't worry! Episode 2 covers this topic completely.

Common ways to conjugate 되다:

1. 됩니다 (formal, as a statement)

2. 됩니까? (formal, as a question)
3. 돼요 (normal, as a statement or a question)
4. 돼 (casual, as a statement or a question)
5. 된다 ("Plain Form," as a statement) – "Plain Form" is covered in Episode 17

Let's go over some example sentences.

밥을 먹어야 됩니다.

"I need to eat." or "I have to eat."

As this sentence uses "됩니다," it would be considered formal (extra polite).

친구에게 편지를 써야 돼요.

"I need to write a letter to my friend." or "I have to write a letter to my friend."

꼭 일을 해야 됩니까?

"Do you really need to work?" or "Do you really have to work?"

"꼭" literally means "surely" or "at any cost," but can also be translated as "really."

난 빨리 가야 돼!

"I need to go quickly!" or "I have to go quickly!"

"난" is a shortened form of "나는," which is used in casual speech with friends of the same age, or to people you are well acquainted with who are younger than you. Leaving off the 요 at the end also shows that this sentence is casual, and not for speaking to people older than yourself or who you are not well acquainted with already. To make this sentence more polite, you could change "나는" to "저는," and add a 요 to the end ("저는 빨리 가야 돼요.").

"Must~"

verb stem + (아/어/etc) + 야 하다

The difference between this form and the last one is tone – "must" sounds stronger, and a tiny bit more serious than "have to~" or "need to~." In Korean, the difference between the two forms is small (smaller than in English). However, feel free to use either one.

Common ways to conjugate 하다:

1. 합니다 (formal, as a statement)
2. 합니까? (formal, as a question)
3. 해요 (normal, as a statement or a question)
4. 해 (casual, as a statement or a question)
5. 한다 ("Plain Form," as a statement) – "Plain Form" is covered in Episode 17

Let's go over some example sentences.

지금 학교에 **가야** 해요.

"I must go to school now."

저는 유럽을 **여행해야** 합니다.

"I must travel Europe."

저는 선물을 **만들어야** 해요.

"I must make a present."

저는 한국말을 더 **배워야** 합니다.

"I must learn more Korean."

I've given examples using various forms of both 되다 and 하다, ranging from formal to casual speech. *If you're not sure which one to use, pick either of these two:*

- **~야 돼요 "need to~" or "have to~"**
- **~야 해요 "must~"**

I hope this PDF lesson will be helpful in addition to watching my videos on YouTube. As always, I appreciate your feedback! Leave comments, suggestions, or requests for future lessons.



Learn Korean Ep. 2: Conjugating the ~요 form

In this lesson we'll learn how to conjugate the "~요 form." I don't normally like to pick favorites, but this verb is probably the **most important verb form** to learn in Korean; that's because the concepts we'll talk about in this lesson will carry over into other grammar forms later on. If you haven't learned much Korean yet, trust me on this – it's important to learn the 요 form before moving on. 그럼, 시작할까요? ("Well then, shall we start?")

How to conjugate the ~요 form

1. Remove the 다
2. Add 아/어/etc
3. Add 요

First, take the verb that you want to conjugate, and remove the 다 at the end.

Congratulations – you have now created what we call the **verb stem**. You'll see me talk about verb stems quite often, and they're an important piece for making other grammar forms as well.

Next, look at the last **vowel** in the final syllable of that verb stem. If it's either ㅏ or ㅑ, then you'll be adding 아; if it's anything else, you'll be adding 어. Simple, isn't it? *Umm, we'll get back to this.*

Finally, add 요 to the end to be polite. You don't need to add a 요 if you're speaking with close friends who are the same age as you or younger, small children, and animals. For all other situations, add the 요.

Let's practice with a few examples:

Take the verb "먹다," "to eat."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 먹
2. The last vowel is ㅏ, which means we add 어 ⇒ 먹어
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 먹어요

Let's try with "좋다," "to be good."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 좋
2. The last vowel is ㅏ, which means we add 아 ⇒ 좋아
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 좋아요

That's the basic rule for conjugating the ~요 form, but there are several exceptions to this rule. The exceptions are good though in the long run – they make the finished product a bit easier to say. Let's take a look at the first exception.

Exception 1: Ends in a vowel with no consonants

After removing the 다, anytime the verb stem ends in a vowel with no consonants (meaning there are no consonants on the bottom of the last syllable) the 아 or 어 ending will combine into the verb, instead of attaching to it. Let me show you what I mean.

Take the verb "가다," "to go."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 가
가 ends in a vowel (it has no consonants on the bottom)
2. The last vowel is ㅏ, so we add 아 ⇒ 가아
But because 가 ends in a vowel (Step 1), we simply combine the 아 ⇒ 가
(Here, it appears that the additional 아 goes away, but it's actually being combined)
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 가요

Take the verb "오다," "to come."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 오
오 ends in a vowel (it has no consonants at the bottom)
2. The last vowel is ㅏ, so we add 아 ⇒ 오아
But because 오 ends in a vowel (Step 1), we simply combine the 아 ⇒ 와
(Here, you can see clearly that it's actually combining)
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 와요

Take the verb "주다," "to give."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 주

주 ends in a vowel (it has no consonants at the bottom)

2. The last vowel is ㅓ, so we add ㅓ어 ⇒ 주어

But because 주 ends in a vowel (Step 1), we simply combine the ㅓ어 ⇒ 줘
(Here it is also easy to see that it's combining together)

3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 줘요

This rule makes these types of verbs easier to say – who wants to say “가아요” anyway?

Exception 2: Ends in ㅣ

When the verb stem ends in a ㅣ, such as in 시, or 치, to name a couple, it combines similarly to Exception 1. Since ㅣ is not ㅏ or ㅑ, normally you would add ㅓ어 to the end. However, to make it easier to say, this ㅓ어 will combine together (becoming ㅓ). Here are some examples:

Take the verb “마시다,” “to drink.”

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 마시
(시 ends in ㅣ)
2. The last vowel is ㅣ, so we add ㅓ어 ⇒ 마시어
Because 마시 ends in ㅣ (Step 1), we combine the ㅓ어 ⇒ 마셔
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 마셔요

Take the verb “가르치다,” “to teach.”

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 가르치
(치 ends in ㅣ)
2. The last vowel is ㅣ, so we add ㅓ어 ⇒ 가르치어
Because 가르치 ends in ㅣ (Step 1), we combine the ㅓ어 ⇒ 가르쳐
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 가르쳐요

Exception 3: Ends in —

When the verb stem ends with the — vowel, in order to know whether to add 아 or ㅓ어 you need to look back one more space (the 2nd to last syllable) to see what **that** syllable's last

vowel is. Then, remove the — and conjugate appropriately. It may sound confusing to read it, but after you see it, it's not that hard.

Take the verb “바쁘다,” “to be busy.”

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 바쁘
(쁘 ends in —)
Because the verb stem ends in —, look back one more space (바)
2. The 2nd to last syllable (바) ends in ㅏ, so we will be adding 아 ⇒ 바쁘 + 아
But first, remove the — ⇒ 바ㅍㅍ
Then add the 아 ⇒ 바ㅍㅍㅏ
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 바ㅍㅍㅏ요

Take the verb “예쁘다,” “to be pretty.”

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 예쁘
(쁘 ends in —)
Because the verb stem ends in —, look back one more space (예)
2. The 2nd to last syllable (예) doesn't end in ㅏ or ㅑ, so we'll add 어 ⇒ 예쁘 + 어
But first, remove the — ⇒ 예ㅍㅍ
Then add the 어 ⇒ 예ㅍㅍㅑ
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 예ㅍㅍㅑ요

“But what if the verb only has 2 syllables? There is no ‘2nd to last syllable’ to look at!”

In this case, it's actually easier. Because there is no 2nd to last syllable, you don't need to do any extra steps to find it. Simply remove the — as before, and add a 어 (because — is not ㅏ or ㅑ).

Take the verb “쓰다,” “to use” or “to write.”

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 쓰
(쓰 ends in —)
Normally you'd look back one more space, but this is all there is.
2. The last vowel is — (which isn't ㅏ or ㅑ), so we always add 어 ⇒ 쓰 + 어
But first, remove the — ⇒ 쓰
Then add the 어 ⇒ 쓰ㅑ
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 쓰ㅑ요

Exception 3: Ends in 르

This rule is a companion to Exception 2. Although 르 technically also ends in —, this is a special case. If you find the verb stem ends in 르, there's one more thing you have to do in order to conjugate it. After removing the —, if you see a ㄹ left alone, the ㄹ makes a copy of itself and moves to the bottom of the 2nd to last syllable. It sounds strange, but don't worry! There are only a few of these verbs, and you'll hear and use them **so often** that you'll probably never worry about how to conjugate them when speaking Korean.

Take the verb “모르다,” “to not know.”

1. Remove the 다 ⇨ 모르
(모르 ends in 르, and 르 also ends in —, so many of the rules are similar)
Because the verb stem ends in —, look back one more space (모)
2. The 2nd to last syllable (모) ends in ㅏ, so we will be adding 아 ⇨ 모르 + 아
But first, remove the — ⇨ 모르
There is a ㄹ by itself, so make a friend for it to play with at the bottom of the 2nd to last syllable ⇨ 몰르
Then add the 아 ⇨ 몰라
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇨ 몰라요

Take the verb “부르다,” “to call” (as in “to call someone's name”).

1. Remove the 다 ⇨ 부르
(부르 ends in 르, and 르 also ends in —, so many of the rules are similar again)
Because the verb stem ends in —, look back one more space (부)
2. The 2nd to last syllable (부) ends in ㅓ (which isn't ㅏ or ㅑ), so we will be adding 어 before we're finished ⇨ 부르 + 어
But first, remove the — ⇨ 부르
There is a ㄹ by itself, so make a copy and put it at the bottom of the 2nd to last syllable ⇨ 불르
Then add the 어 ⇨ 불러
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇨ 불러요

Exception 4: Ends in ㅁ (Descriptive Verbs)

When you're conjugating a **descriptive verb** (a descriptive verb is basically an adjective in English) – not an action verb (such as "to go," "to eat," etc) – and the verb stem ends in a ㅁ, there's an extra step. Remove the ㅁ, and add a 우; then add 어 (since 우 does not end in ㄷ or ㅌ). Also add a 요 at the end like normal in order to sound polite. **You can imagine that we are trading the ㅁ for a 우.** Just remember that this rule only applies to descriptive verbs – *if you're describing something with it, it's a descriptive verb.*

Take the verb "부럽다," "to be jealous."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 부럽
(부럽 ends in ㅁ)
2. Since there's a ㅁ here, we will be trading it away for a 우, and 우 is not ㄷ or ㅌ so we will be conjugating this by adding 어 ⇒ 부럽 + 어
Remove the ㅁ ⇒ 부러
Add a 우 ⇒ 부러우
Now add on the 어 ⇒ 부러우어
But wait! 부러우 ends in a vowel with no consonants on the bottom, so we should combine the ending here ⇒ 부러워
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 부러워요

Take the verb "맵다," "to be spicy."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 맵
(맵 ends in ㅁ)
2. Since there's a ㅁ here, we will be trading it away for a 우, and 우 is not ㄷ or ㅌ so we will be conjugating this by adding 어 ⇒ 맵 + 어
Remove the ㅁ ⇒ 말
Add a 우 ⇒ 말우
Now add on the 어 ⇒ 말우어
말우 ends in a vowel with no consonants on the bottom, so we should combine the ending here too ⇒ 말워요
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 말워요

Remember that this only applies to descriptive verbs, and not to action verbs. For example, take the verb "씹다," "to chew." "To chew" is an action verb, so when conjugating it, here is all that you have to do:

Take the verb "씹다," "to chew."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 씹
2. The last vowel is ㅣ (not ㅏ or ㅑ), which means we add 어 ⇒ 씹어
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 씹어요

Exception 5: 하다

"하다" is one of the most commonly used verbs in the Korean language, and has a special way of conjugating. Fortunately for us, it's easy. "하다" simply becomes "해," to which you can add 요 onto. **All verbs that end with 하다 also conjugate this way**, such as "똑똑하다," "to be smart," or "공부하다," "to study."

Take the verb "하다."

1. Remove the 다 ⇒ 하
2. This is a special verb, so it does not add 아 – it just becomes 해*
3. Add a 요 to the end ⇒ 해요

*Sometimes you might see "하여" used instead of "해," and this is common in older written materials – you won't need to use it yourself, but just be able to recognize what it is.

Exception 5: 이다 and 아니다

As "이다," "to be," is also one of the most commonly used verbs in the Korean language, it too has a special way of conjugating. It's simple, but it has a couple of rules to it. "이다" becomes "이에요" when used after a consonant, or "예요" when used after a vowel. However, you cannot simply remove the 요 here to make it casual; if you want to say it without the 요 (for casual speech), it becomes "이야" when used after a consonant, or "야" when used after a vowel.

“아니다” is a bit simpler to conjugate. It becomes “아니예요,” whether it comes after a consonant or a vowel. To make it casual, it becomes “아니야,” also whether it comes after a consonant or a vowel.

“이다,” “to be”

Polite:

- Consonant + 이에요
- Vowel + 예요

Casual:

- Consonant + 이야
- Vowel + 야

“아니다,” “to not be”

Polite:

- 아니예요

Casual:

- 아니야

Exception 6: ???

Just kidding, there’s no Exception 6. But there are some other irregular verbs that have their own way of conjugating – for these, you’ll simply learn them on a case by case basis, and there are not a lot of them.

One example of a common irregular is the verb “걷다,” “to walk.” If this verb wasn’t irregular, it would conjugate as “걸어요,” but for many verbs that end in ㄷ (such as 걷다), the ㄷ changes into an ㅁ. Therefore, this verb actually becomes “걸어요.” However, the verb “믿다,” “to believe,” just conjugates as “믿어요.”

I know that this lesson was a lot to process, so I highly recommend reading it over again. Also, practice conjugating a few verbs on your own. The best way to get fast at these is to practice them. And although it seems like there are a lot of rules, over time you’ll develop a

sense that will let you feel how verbs should conjugate based on how they sound. Until then, these are the rules you'll need to train that sense.

And that's it! These are all of the rules for conjugating verbs to the ~요 form. I hope this lesson was helpful as well. Your feedback is more than appreciated.



Learn Korean Ep. 3: “Want~” and “Want to~”

They might sound similar at first glance, but “want” and “want to” are two separate grammar forms in Korean. In English we could either say “I **want** an apple,” or “I **want to** eat an apple.” Notice that “want” is followed by a noun that the speaker desires, and “want to” is followed by a verb – this is the difference.

“Want~”

noun + (을/를) + 원하다

Let’s break this up a bit first. Begin with a noun (think “I want **something**”) – that **something** will come first. Then add the object marker; this will be either “을” if the noun ends in a consonant, or “를” if the noun ends in a vowel. I put the object marker in parentheses because it is optional when speaking casually – just know that it normally should be there for speaking politely. Finally, the verb “to want” is “원하다.” Conjugate this verb any way you’d like.

Let’s go over some examples.

저는 펜을 원해요.

“I want a pen.”

여자는 사랑을 원해요.

“Girls want love.”

국민은 새로운 정치를 원합니다.

“The citizens want a new government.”

“국민” means citizen (or citizens), and 정치 means “government.”

그래서 당신이 원하는 것이 뭐예요?

“So what is it you want?”

Here, "원하다" is being used to describe "것이" (것 + the subject marker). "원하는 것" literally means "the thing that (you/I/etc) want." I'll go over how to use verbs in this way in another lesson.

나는 너를 원해.

"I want you."

This sentence uses "나" for "I/me," and "너" for "you," and does not use 요 at the end of the verb "원하다." This sentence would only be used in casual situations with someone you're close with, and with whom it's okay to use slang around.

생일 선물로 뭐를 원하세요?

"What do you want for a birthday present?"

"생일" means "birthday," and "선물" means "present," so together they mean "birthday present." The ending, "하세요," is a polite ending, so this is a polite way to ask the question.

"Want to~" verb stem + 고 싶다

Remember that in order to get the **verb stem**, you take the verb and simply remove the 다 at the end.

After you've got the verb stem, simply attach 고 to the end of it. Then follow that with the verb "싶다," which you can conjugate any way you'd like (don't worry about the actual meaning of the verb "싶다," since it's a bit of an advanced verb).

Let's go over some examples.

가고 싶어요.

"I want to go."

놀고 싶어요.

"I want to play."

“놀다” means “to play,” but when used by teenagers or adults it can translate as “to hang out.” However, it is not the verb used when you want to “play” a game – for that, just use the verb “하다,” “to do,” after the game or activity you want to play.

비빔밥을 먹고 **싶어요**.

“I want to eat bibimbap.”

보고 **싶었어요!**

“I missed you!”

“보다” literally means “to see,” so this sentence means “I wanted to see you!” In Korean, “to see” is the verb most often used for “to miss.” If you miss someone, you can say “I want to see you.” This would be “보고 **싶어요**.”

선생님이 되고 **싶어요**.

“I want to be a teacher.”

You can use the subject marker (이 when used after a consonant, and 가 when used after a vowel) after a noun, followed by the verb 되다 to mean “to become.” This sentence could therefore also be translated as “I want to become a teacher.”

어떤 사람이 되고 **싶습니까?**

“What kind of person do you want to be?”

“어떤” means “what kind of,” and is used as an adjective.

You can see how “want” and “want to” are used differently. I hope that you’ll be able to distinguish them as well, and that this lesson can be helpful. As always, I recommend that you practice these concepts on your own, because practicing will make these concepts become easier and easier.



Learn Korean Ep. 4: "To be" and "To exist"

Of course "to be" and "to exist" are different verbs, but they're often confused by beginning students when learning Korean. In English we sometimes use the verb "to be" to mean "to exist," such as in the sentence "there **is** a book on the table." The "is" in that sentence comes from the verb "to be," but we understand it to mean "there exists" when we read it. In Korean, "to be" ("이다") and "to exist" ("있다") are two separate verbs entirely, so it's important to know when we're referring to something "being" (equaling something else) or "existing."

In this lesson we'll go over the differences between "이다," "to be," and "아니다," "to not be." We'll also cover "있다," "to exist," as well as its opposite, "없다," "to not exist."

이다 "to be"

아니다 "to not be"

"이다" means "to be," but you can also think of it as meaning "to be equal to." If you wanted to say "That is a cat," you would use "이다" because what you are really saying is "That is equal to a cat."

그 것은 고양이**예요**.

"That is a cat."

저는 미국 사람**이에요**.

"I am an American."

저는 좋은 학생**입니다**.

"I am a good student."

When using "이다," it attaches directly to the word it comes after, as you can see in the example sentences above.

“아니다” means “to not be,” and is therefore the opposite of “이다.” While English simply turns words like “to be” or “to exist” negative by adding “not,” Korean sometimes has separate words for them, as you’ll see again when we go over “있다” and “없다.” Because “아니다” is the opposite of “이다,” you can also think of it meaning “to not be equal to.”

그 것은 고양이가 **아니**예요.

“That is not a cat.”

When using “아니다,” the subject marker (이 when followed by a consonant, and 가 when followed by a vowel) comes after the noun you are describing (the subject marker may be left off in casual speech). “이다,” however, does not use the subject marker.

난 바보 **아니**야!

“I am not stupid!”

“난” is an abbreviation of “나는.” This sentence would be for casual situations only.

저는 미국 사람이 **아니**예요.

“I am not an American.”

When using “아니다,” there will be a space between itself and the word it comes after, as you can see in the example sentences above.

Common conjugations for “이다” and “아니다”

“이다”

- 입니다 (more polite)
- 입니까? (more polite – as a question)
- 이에요 (polite – when following a consonant)
- 예요 (polite – when following a vowel)
- 이야 (casual – when following a consonant)
- 야 (casual – when following a vowel)

“아니다”

- 아닙니다 (more polite)

- 아십니까? (more polite – as a question)
- 아니예요 (polite)
- 아니야 (casual)

Note that while “이다” has different conjugations depending on whether it follows a consonant or a vowel, “아니다” does not.

있다 “to exist”

없다 “to not exist”

Just as “이다” and “아니다” are opposites, “있다” and “없다” are also opposites.

Because “있다” means “to exist,” it is commonly used to mean “to have,” as in “I have money.” “없다” is also commonly used to mean “to not have,” as in “I do not have money.”

When using either of these, it’s most common to use the subject marker after what it is that you’re saying exists or doesn’t exist. It is also fine to use the topic marker (은 after a consonant and 는 after a vowel), though this usage is less common and has a slightly different meaning; I go over the differences between the subject marker and the topic marker in Episode 9, but for the time being just **use the subject marker with “있다” and “없다.”**

저는 돈이 많이 **있어요**.

“I have a lot of money.”

This seems to mean “As for me, there is a lot of money,” though because “있다” and “없다” can mean “to have,” this sentence would better translate to “I have a lot of money.”

“많이” is an adverb that means “a lot (of).” An example would be the sentence, “많이 먹었어요!” – “I ate a lot!”

저는 돈이 많이 **없어요**.

“I do not have a lot of money.”

저기 고양이가 **있어요**.

"There is a cat there."

저기 means "there," as in "over there."

그는 학교에 **있다**.

"He is at school."

Although we're saying "is" in this sentence, what we mean is "exists," so "있다" is used in this sentence and not "이다." If we were to write this sentence using "이다," it would mean something like this: "He is equal to at school." Even if we remove "at" from that sentence, it is still incorrect.

"에" is a marker that shows where something or someone exists **at**. It is also used to mean **to**, as in "to a location" (e.g. "I go to school.") I'll go over this marker more in a later lesson.

그는 학교에 **없다**.

"He is not at school."

You can also think of this sentence as meaning "He does not exist at school."

깨끗한 옷이 하나도 **없어요**.

"I don't have even one clean article of clothing."

"깨끗하다" means "to be clean."

"옷" means "an article of clothing," or just "clothes."

"하나도" means "even one," since "하나" means "one" and "도" means "even" or "also."

일주일 뒤에 시험이 **있어요**.

"I have a test after a week."

"일주일" means "a week" or "one week."

"뒤" means "after," and is also used *after* the word you're referring to.

시험 means "a test."

그는 항상 학교에 **있는** 사람**이에요**.

"He is a person who is always at school."

Note that this sentence uses both "있다" and "이다."

"항상" is an adverb that means "always."

"있는" is just "있다" changed into a different form so it can be used to describe something or someone. Here, it's describing "a person" ("사람"). Changing verbs like this to describe

other people and things is more of an advanced topic, and I'll go over it later in another lesson.

Common conjugations for “있다” and “없다”

“있다”

- 있습니다 (more polite – as a statement)
- 있습니까? (more polite – as a question)
- 있어요 (polite)
- 있어 (casual)

“없다”

- 없습니다 (more polite – as a statement)
- 없습니까? (more polite – as a question)
- 없어요 (polite)
- 없어 (casual)

Well, that's all for this lesson. Practice by making your own sentences using what we've gone over today. I hope this lesson could be useful in helping you to achieve your goals for learning the Korean language.



Learn Korean Ep. 5: "Also" and "Again"

Let's go over how to say two important and common words in Korean, "also" and "again." "Also" can be either "도" or "또한," and "again" can be either "또" or "다시." I'll explain how each one of them can be used.

Also

도 / 또한

Both "도" and "또한" can be used to express "also," but each in different ways.

"도" is used to mean "also" when it's **attached to the end of a noun**. In this way, it has the meaning of "also" (as in "I **also** like kimchi"), but it additionally means "even" (as in "**Even** you can speak Korean") and "too" (as in "me **too**").

저**도** 김치를 좋아해요.

"I like kimchi too." or "I like kimchi also."

Notice that using "도" replaces the topic marker or the subject marker (or the object marker). Without using "도" here, this sentence could begin with "저는 or "제가."

그 사람**도** 가게에 갔어요.

"He went to the store also." or "He went to the store too."

저는 요리하**기도** 합니다.

"I even cook." or "I cook too." or "I cook also."

The verb "요리하다," "to cook," can change to become "요리하기," which means "cooking." For a full lesson on verb nominalization (changing verbs into nouns, such as in this example), check out Episode 10.

"도" always comes **after** the noun it refers to, and never before it.

"또한" means "also," and can also translate as "furthermore," or "in addition." **It can be used at the start or in the middle of a sentence.**

또한 저는 미국 사람이에요.

"Furthermore, I am an American." or "In addition, I am an American." or "Also, I am an American."

그 것 **또한** 아름답다.

"That is also beautiful." or "In addition, that is beautiful." or "Furthermore, that is beautiful."

Again

또 / 다시

"또" and "다시" both translate to "again," but are used in different ways.

"또" means "again," and has a literal meaning similar to "또한" ("also"); but the difference is this: **"또" is used as an adverb**. In addition, "또" has a slight negative connotation to it – it is often used when someone is complaining about something, or when someone feels embarrassed (e.g. "Oh no, I can't believe it happened *again*.")

그는 **또** 약속에 늦었어요.

"He was late to the appointment again."

또 왔네요!

"You came again!"

Although "또" is often used in negative situations, it can also be used when speaking sarcastically or in a friendly tone. This sentence could therefore either sound quite friendly, or rude; this depends on the relationship between the speaker and the listener – you know when your friend is joking or not.

"다시" is used when you want to express "again," but don't want to convey any sort of negative feeling. **"다시" is also used as an adverb**.

다시 한번 만날까요?

"Should we meet again once more?"

“한번” means “one time” or “once.”

그녀는 **다시** 그에게 **뽀뽀**했다.

“She kissed him again.”

“뽀뽀하다” means “to kiss,” as in a light kiss (not making out).

또다시

There’s one more way to say “again,” and that is with “또다시.” As it appears, “또다시” is a combination of both “또” and “다시.” Its meaning has more emphasis (it sounds stronger) than using either of them individually. Like “또” and “다시,” **“또다시” is also used as an adverb.** “또다시,” like “또,” also has a negative connotation.

“또다시” can also be translated as “ever again” and can be used when telling someone not to do something. **If you’re not certain how to use “또다시,” just use “또” or “다시”** since “또다시” is not used in all of the same situations as “또” and “다시.” But it’s important to recognize it and know what it means.

또다시 여기에 오지 마세요.

“Don’t come here ever again.”

I hope that you’ll be able to use “도” and “또한,” as well as “또” and “다시” in your Korean sentences more often. I recommend that you practice these words by making sentences of your own. Good luck in your Korean studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 6: "Already"

Korean has two ways to say "already" – "이미" and "벌써." They're a little different, but the difference is pretty simple.

Already 이미 / 벌써

"이미" is the **regular way** to express "already."

"벌써" means "already," but it also **expresses surprise or shock**.

So whenever you want to express surprise or shock, use "벌써," and for all other times use "이미." It's simple, right?

나는 **이미** 숙제를 했어.

"I already did the homework."

이미 시작했어요.

"It already started."

벌써 시작했어요.

"It already started." ("... and I'm **surprised** that it did!")

첫 사랑을 찾았지만 **이미** 결혼한 뒤였다.

"I found my first love, but it was after already getting married."

"첫" is an adjective that attaches before nouns to mean "(the) first."

그분은 **벌써** 나가셨어요.

"He already left." ("... and I'm **surprised** that he did!")

"그분" means "that person," and is a polite way to refer to someone who you are not directly speaking with.

"나가셨어요" is the past tense of the verb "나가시다," an extra polite way of saying "나가다."

벌써 끝났어?

"Is it finished already?"

Since this sentence is lacking a "요" at the end, it is informal and for casual use only.

벌써 졸업할 때가 되었다.

"It's already time to graduate."

"졸업하다" means "to graduate."

This sentence literally means "Already it became the time to graduate."

That's all for this lesson. As always, I recommend that you practice making your own sentences using "이미" and "벌써" in order to get a good feeling for how to use them in regular speech. Good luck in your Korean studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 7: Negative Sentences

What is a negative sentence? In English we might say "I study Korean" – this would be a normal sentence. A negative version of the same sentence would be "I **do not** study Korean."

There are two ways to make a sentence negative. One way is by taking the verb stem (remember that the verb stem is just the verb with the **다** removed) and attaching "지 않다," and then conjugating the "않다" part at the end. Another way is by simply adding "안" before the verb, and conjugating the verb like normal.

Is there a difference between "~지 않다" and "안?" Yes, but it's not a big difference; "안" sounds a bit more informal than "~지 않다."

verb stem + 지 않다

You can make any verb negative by taking its verb stem and attaching "지 않다" onto the end. Then, simply conjugate "않다" anyway you'd like. Here are some example sentences:

저는 한국말을 자주 공부하지 **않아요**.
"I do not study Korean often."

날씨가 좋지 **않습니다**.
"The weather is not good."

그렇게 나쁘지 **않아**.
"It's not that bad."
"그렇게" means "that" or "so," and is used as an adverb.

You can also use "~지 않다" when asking questions to convey the meaning of "Don't you?" or "Aren't you?" In English, you'd have to rearrange the words in a sentence when asking questions like this, but in Korean the word order stays the same.

김치를 좋아하지 **않아요?**
"Don't you like kimchi?"

그 여자를 사랑하지 **않아**?

"Don't you love her?"

Sometimes you might see other particles attached between the "지" and the "않다" parts, such as "도," the subject marker (이/가) or the topic marker (은/는). This is perfectly normal.

그는 학교에 **가지도** **않아요**.

"He doesn't even go to school."

And here are some common ways to conjugate "않다" as well:

- **않습니다** (more polite – only as a statement)
- **않습니까?** (more polite – only as a question)
- **않아요** (polite)
- **않아** (casual)

안 + verb

The other way to make a sentence negative is by adding "안" before the verb. Before I explain when it can be used, here are some examples (these sentences are for casual use only):

나는 **안** 심심해.

"I am not bored."

학교에 **안** 가?

"Aren't you going to school?"

그거 **안** 먹어?

"Aren't you going to eat that?"

"거" is a common abbreviation of "것"

Which one can I use?

So you've now learned how to use both “~지 않다” and “안” to make negative sentences, but the question is often asked, “Which one can I use?” There is a simple answer, and a not-so-simple answer to this question.

You can use “~지 않다” with any verb you'd like. You can use “안” with many verbs, but not with all verbs.

This is the simple answer. If you're not sure which verbs can use “안,” then use “~지 않다” to make them negative. If you'd like the not-so-simple answer for exactly when you can use “안” then keep reading. If you're a beginner who's learning Korean, you may want to ignore the following section, which I've written in purple below.

About 60~65% of the Korean language comes from Chinese. Before 한글 was created, the only way to write was using the Chinese language, and only educated people could read and write Chinese. Due to China's long history with Korea, over time many words came into the Korean language – we call these words “Sino-Korean” (“Sino” means “China”). You can see an example of Chinese in Korea if you look at their numbers. “일, 이, 삼” is how Koreans count “1, 2, 3,” but Koreans also have their own “Pure-Korean” numbers, which begin with “하나, 둘, 셋.” These words did not come from China, which is why they're called “Pure-Korean.”

So why is that important? Because only Pure-Korean verbs can use “안,” and Sino-Korean verbs can only use “~지 않다.” However, Pure-Korean verbs can also use “~지 않다,” which is why I say that **if you're not sure if you can use “안,” just use “~지 않다” to make a verb negative.**

There are some exceptions. “정하다” and “통하다” are Sino-Korean, but can also use “안.”

How can I tell a Pure-Korean verb from a Sino-Korean verb? The short answer is “you can't,” but there are some tricks that can help. For example, all verbs that only contain two characters will be Pure-Korean verbs. This includes many of the verbs you may already be familiar with such as “가다,” “오다,” “먹다,” etc. However, this rule does not always include “하다,” since “하다” appears in both Sino-Korean and Pure-Korean verbs.

Unless you're interested in learning which verbs came from China and which ones are Pure-Korean (even most native Koreans will not know) you will have to rely on what you've heard before, and use “안” with verbs that you know are okay to use them with.

GO! Billy Korean

Okay, we're back now. To summarize what I've written above, you can use "안" only with verbs that you know it is okay to use "안" with; for all other verbs, use "~지 않다." **If you're not sure whether you can use "안" with a verb or not, just use "~지 않다."**

I hope this lesson will help you to make better negative sentences in Korean. I recommend that you practice by making your own example sentences with what we've gone over. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 8: "To" and "from" a person

This lesson will cover how to say "to a **person**" and "from a **person**." This is different than how to say "to a *location*" and "from a *location*," which I'll explain in a later lesson. There are three ways to say "to a person," and three ways to say "from a person."

"To" a person

"To" a person:

- 께 (extra polite)
- 에게 (normal)
- 한테 (casual)

All three of these are used directly after the person (noun) that they're referring to.

선생님께 편지를 썼습니다.

"I wrote a letter **to** the teacher."

Since I'm using "께," it shows extra politeness **toward the teacher**.

부모님께 말했어요.

"I told my parents." (Literally, "I said it to my parents.")

Although "께" shows extra politeness, it does so **only to the person you are referring to**, and not to the speaker. This is why the verb can still have regular "~요" ending – it could even end without a "요" in casual situations.

저에게 돈을 주세요.

"Please give me money." (Literally, "Please give money to me.")

나는 그에게 선물을 주었다.

"I gave him a present." (Literally, "I gave a present to him.")

내게 불가능한 일은 없다.

"Nothing is impossible to me."

"내게" is an abbreviation of "나에게."

“불가능하다” means “to be impossible.”

나한테 말해 줘.

“Tell me.” (Literally, “Tell it to me.”)

왜 자꾸 나한테 물어보는 거야?

“Why do you keep asking me?” (Literally, “Why do you keep asking it to me?”)

“자꾸” means “to keep~ (doing)” or “repeatedly,” and is an adverb.

“물어보다” means “to ask.”

In English, when using verbs such as “to ask” or “to tell,” we remove “to” when the verb comes immediately before the person we are speaking to (e.g. “I *asked* *him* a question” versus “I *asked* a question to *him*.”). In Korean, “to” is always added, even if the English translation does not contain it.

Since this sentence uses “나” and ends with “야,” it is casual, so “한테” fits nicely.

“From” a person

All three of these are also used directly after the person (noun) that they’re referring to.

“From” a person:

- 께 (extra polite)
- 에게(서) (normal)
- 한테(서) (casual)

Note that “께” remains the same, and the other two are also the same, but with “서” added in parentheses. The “서” in parentheses is optional, and is only needed when necessary. Most often, the context of the sentence alone can tell the listener whether the speaker means “to” or “from.” Here’s an example to show what I mean:

그분께 드렸습니다.

“I gave it to him.”

“그분” is a polite way to say “him” or “her.”

“드리다” is a more polite way to say “주다,” “to give,” and is used when the speaker is giving something to someone he or she wishes to show extra respect to; it is also quite common.

그분께 받았습니다.

“I received it from him.”

Notice that there is no confusion that the first sentence means “to” and the second sentence means “from.” It is easy to distinguish from the context.

오랜 친구에게서 전화가 왔다.

“I got a call from an old friend.”

“오랜 친구” means “an old friend” (as in the time you’ve known him or her, not age).

“전화가 오다” means “to get a call,” but literally it means “a call comes.”

This sentence is a good example of a time when you should add the “서.” Without “서,” this sentence could mean “an old friend got a phone call” (literally, “a call came to an old friend”). **If the meaning could be vague, or if you’re not sure, then it’s best to add the “서” when you want to say “from.”**

그 얘기 누구한테 들었어?

“Who’d you hear that from?”

“얘기” is a casual abbreviation for “이야기.”

Since the verb is “듣다,” “to hear” or “to listen,” it’s clear that this sentence could only mean “from,” so the “서” is not necessary.

I’d recommend reading this lesson over again and practicing making your own sentences using what we’ve gone over, until you’re able to use “to a person” and “from a person” without difficulty. I hope this lesson was helpful. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 9: Topic and Subject Markers

Topic Markers (은/는) and Subject Markers (이/가) have been a large source of confusion among Korean learners; even most native Koreans can't explain how to use them, although they are able to use them perfectly. The Topic Marker and Subject Marker are actually quite simple, and their usages and meanings are well defined; much of the confusion revolving around these comes from Korean lessons that are lacking in explanation, or that gloss over important details. Let's clear some things up.

Topic Marker

The Topic Marker is either "은" if it comes after a consonant, or "는" if it comes after a vowel, and is **placed directly after a new topic**. If I'm talking about my best friend ("my best friend" will be the topic of my sentence for this example), and I want to say "My best friend went to the store," I'd place the Topic Marker directly after "my best friend."

"내 가장 친한 친구는 가게에 갔다."

"My best friend went to the store."

Remember that "나의" often shortens to "내."

Since the topic of the sentence has now been established as being "my best friend," anything else I say afterward will also be in reference to the topic ("my best friend"). If I wanted to then say in the next sentence, "Yesterday my best friend bought an apple," I wouldn't have to restate the topic – I wouldn't have to add "my best friend" in this next sentence – since we already know what the topic is. This is the function of the Topic Marker.

"어제 사과를 샀다."

"Yesterday (my best friend) bought an apple."

We don't need to restate "my best friend," since it was already established as the topic in the previous sentence.

I should note that saying "My best friend went to the store," and "Yesterday he bought an apple," isn't how anyone would naturally speak in a regular situation in Korean (or in

English), but this example does show how the topic marker basically works. **The Topic Marker sets the topic of what you're talking about.**

You can think of the Topic Marker as meaning something like **"As for~,"** as in the example "As for me (*I don't know about you guys, but*), I like kimchi." It sets up a whole new topic for the sentence, changing whatever may have been there before.

"내 가장 친한 친구는 가게에 갔다."

"As for my best friend, he went to the store."

저는 김치를 좋아해요.

"I like kimchi." or "As for me, I like kimchi."

Subject Marker

The Subject Marker is either "이" if it comes after a consonant, or "가" if it comes after a vowel, and is also **placed directly after a subject**. By "subject," I mean the same "subject" that we learn in English class.

"I kicked the ball."

Can you find the subject in this sentence? Can you remember that kid in elementary school who could twirl a pencil around his thumb? (The subject here is "I," by the way.)

In English, the subject is simply whatever, or whoever is performing an action, or being described in the sentence; the Subject Marker in Korean works the same way. When you use the Subject Marker you are specifying the actual subject of a sentence. This is different from the Topic Marker because **while the Topic Marker sets aside a new topic for the sentence (remember "As for~"), the Subject Marker simply marks the subject, and does not change any previous topic that the speaker may have been talking about.**

철수가 점심을 먹었어요?

"Did Cheolsoo eat lunch?"

"점심(을) 먹다" means "to eat lunch."

For this sentence, the topic remains the same – whatever the topic originally may have been. Before this sentence, the speakers may have been discussing their favorite movie, and could return to talking about movies even after this sentence is asked and answered.

If you were to ask this question using the Topic Marker, the overall meaning would change.

철수는 점심을 먹었어요?

"How about Cheolsoo – did he eat lunch?" or "As for Cheolsoo, did he eat lunch?"

You can see how the Topic Marker changes the topic of the sentence. Even if the topic before were 'favorite movies', the speaker has now changed the topic to be about Cheolsoo.

The Subject Marker only points out the subject of a sentence, and doesn't change the topic to a new one. Because of this, **the Subject Marker is also used when answering questions.**

뭐가 가장 좋을 것 같아요?

"What do you think would be best?"

이게 가장 좋을 것 같아요.

"I think this would be best."

"게" is a casual, shorter way to say "것이."

This sentence would not be answered using the Topic Marker, because it would sound awkward; using the Topic Marker would sound like you were changing the question.

Here's an example of what it would be like to use the Topic Marker in a place where the Subject Marker should be used instead:

이건 가장 좋을 것 같아요.

"As for this, I think it would be best."

"건" is a casual, shorter way to say "것은."

This sentence would only be said if you were comparing "this" to something else, since using the Topic Marker here would be introducing a different topic. You *could* say "As for this, it would be best," if you are planning on talking about "this" afterward, and you felt the listener would not mind if you changed the topic.

뭐가 그렇게 웃겨요?

"What's so funny?"

"웃기다" means "to be ridiculous," or "to be (laughably) funny."

To answer the above sentence, you can fill in the blank below.

"_____ (이/가) 웃겨요."

If you wanted to put a person here as the subject, just know that calling a person "웃기다" is rude. A better way to call someone "funny" in a positive way is with the verb "재미(가) 있다," which means "to be humorous" or "to be entertaining."

"철수가 재미 있어요."

"Cheolsoo is humorous (funny)."

Topic and Subject Marker... together

Let's go over some examples using the Topic Marker and the Subject Marker in the same sentence; hopefully this will help you see a bit more clearly the different roles they play.

나는 내 가장 친한 친구가 가게에 갔다고 말했다.

"I said that my best friend went to the store."

Whenever someone is saying a quote, the person saying the quote (here it is "나") will be followed by the Topic Marker, and the subject of the quote (here it is "내 가장 친한 친구") will be followed by the Subject Marker.

This does not only apply to quotes; any time you have one statement inside of another in the same sentence, you will use the Topic and Subject Markers in this same way.

나는 엄마가 가장 좋다.

"I like mom the best."

This literally means, "As for me, mom is the best."

We can switch the topic of the sentence (“나”) with the subject of the sentence (“엄마”) and show you how it would look.

엄마는 내가 가장 좋다.

“Mom likes me the best.”

This literally means, “As for mom, I am the best.”

“나” + the Subject Marker becomes “내가.”

생선은 도미가 최고지.

“As for fish, snapper is the best.”

This can also be translated (more naturally) as, “When it comes to fish, snapper is the best.”

“생선” means “(dead) fish,” and “도미” means “snapper (fish).” If you wanted to talk about a live fish, you’d use “물고기.”

I hope you can see that the Topic Marker and Subject Marker aren’t so vague after all.

However, they do take practice to get right. Practice speaking Korean as much as possible and you’ll be using both of these naturally in no time.



Learn Korean Ep. 10: Nominalization

What's nominalization? Nominalization is when you change a verb into a noun. The word "nominalization" comes from the Latin word "nom," meaning "name" or "noun."

Here are some examples of nominalization:

저는 책을 **읽는 것**을 좋아해요.

"I like to read books."

수영하기가 어려워요.

"Swimming is difficult."

그분의 **가르침**이 아주 훌륭했다.

"His teachings were very wonderful."

Korean has three different ways to change a verb into a noun.

- verb stem + 는 것
 - 하다 ⇨ 하는 것
- verb stem + 기
 - 하다 ⇨ 하기
- verb stem + 음/ㅁ ("음" if it ends in a consonant, or "ㅁ" if it ends in a vowel)
 - 하다 ⇨ 함

verb stem + 는 것

This form is a tiny bit more formal than "verb stem + 기."

저는 영화 **보기**를 좋아해요.

"I like watching movies."

저는 영화 **보는 것**을 좋아해요.

"I like to watch movies."

The difference in English between the two above sentences seems small, but there is a difference in feeling; Koreans will notice this difference perhaps more than an average English speaker would.

Another way you can think of this form is by translating it as "**the act of~**," as in "the act of doing something."

먹다 ⇨ "먹는 것" ⇨ "to eat" or "**the act of eating**"

저는 밥 **먹는 것**을 좋아해요.

"I like to eat." or "I like the act of eating."

The only exception to this rule is with verb stems that end with "ㄹ." For these cases, simply remove the "ㄹ" before adding "는 것."

- "살다" "to live" ⇨ 사는 것
- "알다" "to know" ⇨ 아는 것

verb stem + 기

This form is a tiny bit more informal than "verb stem + 는 것." **This form is also often used when making a to-do list.**

- 청소하다 ⇨ 청소하기 ⇨ "cleaning (the house)"
- 공부하다 ⇨ 공부하기 ⇨ "studying"
- 요리하다 ⇨ 요리하기 ⇨ "cooking"

This form is also used with several other grammatical constructions such as:

- "because~" ⇨ verb stem + 기 때문에
- "before~" ⇨ verb stem + 기 전에
- "in order to~" ⇨ verb stem + 기 위해

There are some times when either this form (verb stem + 기) or the first form (verb stem + 는 것) will be preferred over the other; don't worry about that though, as both forms are

grammatically correct. You will learn which ones sound better through regular Korean practice.

verb stem + 음/ㅁ

Use “음” when the verb stem ends in a consonant, or “ㅁ” when it ends in a vowel. Although this one can also be used to turn verbs into nouns, just like the other two forms, **this form is only used when the noun becomes its own, independent noun**. By that, I mean turning a verb into a noun this way causes the new noun to seem like its own, separate vocabulary word. Because of this, **nouns made from this form will most often be listed in the dictionary as their own entries** (whereas nouns made from other forms will not).

Here are a few examples of verbs changed into nouns using this form:

가르치다 “to teach”	⇒ 가르침	⇒ “teachings”
배우다 “to learn”	⇒ 배움	⇒ “learning” or “study”
자다 “to sleep”	⇒ 잠	⇒ “sleep” (often used in “잠(을) 자다,” “to sleep”)
추다 “to dance”	⇒ 춤	⇒ “a dance” (often used in “춤(을) 추다,” “to dance”)
살다 “to live”	⇒ 삶	⇒ “life”
돕다 “to help”	⇒ 도움	⇒ “help” (this is an irregular verb)

You can see through these examples how this form is used to create completely independent, unique nouns from the verbs they came from.

This verb also has one more usage. It can be used as a verb conjugation at the end of a sentence. Instead of using the ~요 form or the ~니다 form (or any other form), you can just attach “음” or “ㅁ” to a verb stem to end a sentence.

- “안 해요.” or “안 합니다” ⇒ 안 함.
- “싫어요.” or “싫습니다” ⇒ 싫음.

Conjugating a verb this way is used in written notices or in “comment” sections on papers. A school record on a student might read in the comments, “숙제 안함” (“Doesn’t do homework.”), or perhaps, “아주 좋은 학생임” (“Is a very good student.”).

In any other form (such as speech, or any other written medium), this form is only used as slang by young teenagers – it is considered impolite, and immature. Here's an example:

너 싫음. 안 사귀.

"I hate you. I'm not dating you."

I don't recommend using this form in this way, as it sounds very childish, but just understand what it means in case you do see or hear it.

Here's one more tip. **If you're not sure whether you can use this form (verb stem + 음/ㅁ) to change a verb into a noun, it's best to pick one of the other two forms.**

Well, that's all for this lesson. I recommend practicing nominalization more on your own with some Korean verbs to make sure you've got it down. Hope this helps!



Learn Korean Ep. 11: This, That, and That

There's one way to say "this" in Korean ("이"), but two ways to say "that" ("그" and "저"). Let's go over each of them.

이 This

"이" is used when talking about something that's close to the speaker, just like in English.

이게 내 가방이고, 그게 네 가방이야.

"This is my bag, and that is your bag."

"게" is a casual way to write and say "것이."

"네" is "너의," and is pronounced "니" in casual speech.

"이" can be used for physical things that are close to the speaker, or for things mentally close to the speaker, such as ideas or concepts, also just like in English.

이 생각에 대해 어떻게 생각하세요?

"What do you think about this idea?"

그 That

"그" is used when talking about something that's close to the listener.

이게 내 가방이고 그게 네 가방이야.

"This is my bag, and that is your bag."

In this sentence, "그게" ("your bag") must be close to the listener.

그 방법이 좋은 것 같아요.

"I think that method is good."

Here, "method" is used with "그," meaning it must be close to the listener; in this case, it's something that is mentally close – a concept. It was probably recently presented by the listener to the speaker of this sentence.

저 That

“저” is used when talking about something that’s not close to either the speaker or the listener (far from both listener and speaker).

저 집이 아주 커요.

“That house is very big.”

“저” is used here because the house must be far from both the speaker and the listener. If the house were directly next to the listener, the speaker would have used “그.”

저게 무슨 좋은 아이디어라고?

“What kind of good idea is that?”

This sentence could be said while watching television with a friend and a program is playing that is talking about “an amazing idea.”

“저” would be used here because the thing, the idea presented in the program, is far from both the speaker and the listener. Neither the speaker nor the listener had the idea themselves.

Overview

Before we go any further, let’s summarize how to use “이,” “그” and “저.”

“이” = “This”

- Used for things or concepts close to the speaker.

“그” = “That”

- Used for things or concepts close to the listener.

“저” = “That”

- Used for things or concepts far from both the speaker and the listener.

Advanced “그” vs. “저”

“그” and “저” can, in certain cases, seem to overlap in usage. **This section is not for people who are learning about “이,” “그” and “저” for the first time**, as it could make things confusing – I’ve written this part in purple to distinguish it as difficult material. Read this section only after you’ve got a strong grasp of the basic concept first – these are **advanced concepts**.

그분은 정말 좋은 선생님이셨어요.

“That person was a really good teacher.”

This sentence means that the teacher must be close to the listener somehow, right?

Well, not here. Because “그” has one more usage.

“그” is also used for things (or people) that are **physically far** from both the listener and the speaker, but only **if the listener and speaker aren’t looking at it** when talking about it.

A: 저 집이 아주 커요.

“That house is very big.”

“저” is used because the house the speaker is talking about is far from both the speaker and the listener. A reply might look like this:

B: 네, 저 집이 아주 커요.

“Yes, that house is very big.”

The listener still replied with “저” because the house is still far away. However, **if the listener and speaker began to walk away from the house and stopped looking at it**, the next sentence could look like this:

A: 그 집에서 누가 살고 있을까?

“Do you think someone might be living in that house?”

Notice that the speaker switched to “그,” because even though the house is still far away from both of them, it’s no longer something they’re looking at. **If they were to stop and turn to face to house again, they would return to using “저.”**

“저” also has another usage; “저” can be used for **things far from both the speaker and the listener**, and **that the speaker knows but does not think the listener knows what he or she is referring to**.

A: 저 사람을 혹시 본 적이 있어요?

“Have you seen that person before by chance?”

“혹시” means “by (any) chance.”

Here, the speaker knows who “that person” is, but doesn’t think the listener does. Once the speaker thinks that the listener knows “that person,” the speaker will change to “그.”

B: 아니요. 저 사람을 본 적이 없어요.

“No. I have never seen that person before.”

The listener (B) probably looks at the person, realizes he or she does not know them, and replies. At this point, the speaker of the first sentence (A) now knows that the listener (B) knows who he or she is referring to (even though the listener does not know who the person is, the listener is aware of who the speaker was referring to).

A: 그 사람이 학생일까요?

"Could that person be a student?"

It changed to "그," because the speaker (A) now knows that the listener (B) at least knows who he or she is referring to.

Although this makes things more complicated, the original meanings of "그" and "저" have not changed at all. Talking about a house that is far away using "저" means **the concept of the house** is also far away from both the listener and the speaker – talking about that same house using "그" means the concept of that house is now close to the listener. The concept's location can change mentally depending on the situation (depending on whether the speaker is assuming the concept of the house is **far** or **close** to the listener).

Additional Uses of "그" and "저"

Here are a few additional uses of "이" and "저" that can be used by **any level**.

"이" can also be used for insulting someone, the same way we might start a sentence with "You~" in English – "You idiot!" In Korean, this would be "이 바보야!" Be careful when using "이" in this way, as it can sound rude, like in English, when used in the wrong situations.

"그" can also be used as an informal way to say "him" in Korean, and "그녀" as an informal way to say "her." You'll see this used in **textbooks** often, but it is not commonly used in speech because it can sound rude.

Don't worry if you skipped over the advanced parts in purple – they're for later on anyway, and by the time you want to learn them, you may already know them! The most important parts to take away from this lesson are in the Overview section. I hope this lesson has helped you to better understand how "이," "그" and "저" are used.



Learn Korean Ep. 12: "Only"

There are many ways to say "only" in Korean, and it all depends on the context. Which one you pick may depend on whether or not you want to use it as an adverb, or an adjective, etc. Pick and choose the ones you think you'd like to use.

noun + 만

Attach "만" directly after a noun. "만" replaces any Topic Marker or Subject Marker that might've originally gone there.

저**만** 한국말을 합니다.
 "Only I speak Korean."

그는 영화**만** 좋아해요.
 "He likes only movies."

"만" can also follow verbs that have been changed into nouns (see Episode 10 on nominalization).

매일 수업에 가**기만** 하면 졸업할 수 있을 거예요.
 "If you only go to class you'll be able to graduate."
 "졸업하다" means "to graduate," and "수업" means "a class (at school)."

noun + 뿐이다

내게 남은 것은 시간**뿐이다**.
 "The only thing I have left is time."
 "내게" is a shorter way to write "나에게."

While "만" can be used with verbs converted into nouns, "뿐이다" cannot. **In order to use this form with verbs, take the verb stem and add "ㄹ/을 뿐이다"** (ㄹ if the verb stem ends in a vowel, and 을 if it ends in a consonant).

나는 기도할 **뿐이다**.

"I only pray."

"기도하다" means "to pray."

Using "만" this sentence could be written as "나는 기도하기**만** 한다."

noun + 밖에

This form is only used in negative constructions (see Episode 7 on negative sentences). The literal meaning of "밖에" is "outside," as in "집밖에" ("outside the house"). It also translates as "other than" or "except."

나는 한국말**밖에** 못해.

"I can only speak Korean." or "I don't speak anything other than Korean."

그 사람**밖에** 없어요.

"There's only that person" or "There isn't anybody except that person."

Another common place to see "밖에" is in the construction, "to be unable to do anything but~" ("The only thing one can do is~"); this is made by taking the verb stem and adding "ㄹ/을 수밖에 없다."

시험 결과가 아직 안 나왔는데 기다릴 **수밖에** 없어.

"The test results haven't come out yet, so the only thing I can do is wait."

"결과" means "results," and "기다리다" means "to wait."

이제 한국에 있으니까 한국말을 배**을 수밖에** 없다.

"Now that I'm in Korea there's nothing I can do but learn Korean."

noun + 뿐만 아니라

verb stem + ㄹ/을 뿐만 아니라

This one is a combination of "뿐" and "만," and means "It's not only (noun), but~."

그것**뿐만 아니라** 이것도 그래요.

"It's not only that, but this too."

저는 회사원**일 뿐만 아니라** 사장입니다.

"I'm not only an employee, but I'm the president."

"회사원" means "an employee (of a company)," and "사장" means "the president (of a company)."

단지

"단지" can translate as "only," but another good translation is "**simply**."

나는 **단지** 자고 싶다.

"I only want to sleep." or "I simply want to sleep."

다만

"다만" can translate as "only," but another good translation is "**merely**."

나는 **다만** 키가 작을 뿐이다.

"It's only that I'm small." or "It's merely that I'm small."

오직

"오직" is often used in combination with "만" or "뿐."

그건 **오직** 당신**만**이 할 수 있는 일이다.

"That is something that only you can do."

"그건" is a short way of saying or writing "그것은."

내겐 **오직** 너**뿐**이야.

"All I have is only you."

“내겐” is a short way of saying or writing “나에게는.”

단

“단” is used as an **adjective**, so it’s used to describe a noun as being “only” something.

이 세상이 **단** 하나뿐인 책.

“The only (one) book in the world.”

“이 세상” means “the world” (literally, “this world”).

“단 하나” means “only one.”

유일하다

This verb means “to be the only one,” and can be used as either an adverb or an adjective.

As an adverb, it’s “**유일하게**,” and as an adjective, it’s “**유일한**.” Using it either way is fine.

선생님이 **유일하게** 한국말을 할 수 있는 사람이세요.

“The teacher is the only person who can speak Korean.”

선생님이 한국말을 할 수 있는 **유일한** 사람이세요.

“The teacher is the only person who can speak Korean.”

verb stem + ㄹ/을 따름이다

This one can translate as “I’m only~” or “I’m just~,” and is most often used with descriptive verbs (adjectives).

그 친구의 성격이 부러울 **따름이다**.

“It’s just that I’m jealous of his personality.”

스테이크에 케찹을 뿌리는 것은 별로라고 생각할 **따름입니다**.

“I just think putting ketchup on steak isn’t that great.”

Conclusion

I know there are a lot of these, so don't stress about learning all of them. **If you can only pick one to learn, learn "만," as it is the most versatile option.** As for the rest of them, look at the examples and choose which ones you think you could find useful. I hope that you'll be able to expand your Korean through this lesson.



Learn Korean Ep. 13: “Whether (or not)” and “If”

Let’s go over how to say “Whether” and “If.” An example in English would be “I don’t know whether he’ll be there,” or “I don’t know if he’ll be there.” In this way, it’s used for talking about things that are unknown.

The rules will change a little bit, depending on whether we’re working with **Action Verbs** or **Descriptive Verbs**.

What is an Action Verb? Action Verbs are verbs that **do** things. “먹다,” “to eat,” and “자다,” “to sleep,” are two examples. “있다,” “to exist,” and “없다,” “to not exist,” are also Action Verbs.

What is a Descriptive Verb? Descriptive Verbs are verbs that **describe** things. “친절하다,” “to be friendly,” and “좋다,” “to be good,” are two examples. “이다,” “to be,” and “아니다,” “to not be,” are also Descriptive Verbs.

Using Action Verbs

Here are the rules for conjugating “Whether (or not)” and “If” when using an Action Verb.

Present Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + 는지

Past Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + 어/아/etc + 는지
 - The middle part (어/아/etc) is conjugated the same as when making the “요” form (see Episode 2).

Future Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + (ㄹ/을)지
 - “을지” is used following a consonant, and “ㄹ지” is used following a vowel.

Using Descriptive Verbs

Here are the rules for conjugating "Whether (or not)" and "If" when using a Descriptive Verb. The only difference here from Action Verbs is when using the present tense.

Present Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + (ㄴ/은)지
 - "은지" follows a consonant, and "ㄴ지" follows a vowel.

Past Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + 어/아/etc + 쓰는지
 - *This is the same as for Action Verbs.*

Future Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + (ㄹ/을)지
 - *This is the same as for Action Verbs.*

When using Descriptive Verbs, many of the rules that apply when conjugating the "요" form also apply here. For example, take the verb "춡다," "to be cold." As usual, remove the "ㅂ" and add "우," just like when making the "요" form. Let's take a look in detail:

Using the Descriptive Verb "춡다:"

- Remove the "다" ⇨ "춡"
- Conjugate as you would for "요" form:
 - The verb ends with "ㅂ," so remove the "ㅂ" and add "우" ⇨ "춡우"
- Now add any tense you'd like....
 - Present: "춡운지"
 - Past: "춡웠는지"
 - Future: "춡울지"

Descriptive Verbs require this additional step only in verbs with exceptions (such as verbs ending in "ㅂ"); Action Verbs do not. I highly recommend going over Episode 2 to make sure that you have a good grasp on standard "요" form conjugation.

Example Sentences

저는 그가 거기에 **있을지** 몰라요.

"I don't know whether he will be there." or "I don't know if he will be there."

This sentence uses an Action Verb in the future tense.

저는 그가 거기에 **있는지** 몰라요.

"I don't know whether/if he is there."

This sentence uses an Action Verb in the present tense.

저는 그가 거기에 **있었는지** 몰라요.

"I don't know whether/if he was there."

This sentence uses an Action Verb in the past tense.

내일도 오늘처럼 **더울지** 궁금해요.

"I'm wondering whether/if tomorrow will be hot too like today."

This sentence uses a Descriptive Verb in the future tense.

지금 철수가 **바쁜지** 알려주세요.

"Please tell me whether/if Cheolsoo is busy now."

This sentence uses a Descriptive Verb in the present tense.

어제 그 시험이 **어려웠는지** 알고 싶어요.

"I want to know whether/if that test yesterday was difficult."

This sentence uses a Descriptive Verb in the past tense.

Whether or not

By adding one more form, you can also say "whether **or not**." This form is an intermediate concept, so I've highlighted it in purple. Please skip this section if this is your first time learning about the concepts above. Here's an example:

저는 그가 거기에 있을지 **없을지** 몰라요.

"I don't know whether or not he will be there."

This sentence literally means "*I don't know whether he will be there or whether he will not be there.*"

Here's how to conjugate it:

For Action Verbs, take the negative form of the verb (see Episode 7) and conjugate it the same way as shown above. The negative form of the verb can just be the verbs own opposite (e.g. "좋아하다" ⇨ "싫어하다," or "있다" ⇨ "없다"), or it can be the verb conjugated into a negative form (e.g. "좋아하다" ⇨ "좋아하지 않다") – you are free to choose either one. You can also add "아니면" (before the negative form of the verb) to separate the sentence into two parts, and make it clearer and easier to understand.

동생이 올지 **안 올지** 궁금하지 않아요?

"Aren't you curious whether or not your younger sibling will come?"

그가 K 팝을 좋아하는지 **안 좋아하는지** 몰라요.

"I don't know whether or not he likes K-pop."

This sentence literally means, "I don't know whether he likes K-pop or doesn't like it."

그가 K 팝을 좋아하는지 **싫어하는지** 몰라요.

"I don't know whether he likes K-pop or hates it."

For Descriptive Verbs, take the negative form of the verb and conjugate it the same way as shown above. You can also add "아니면" to separate the sentence into two parts, and make it clearer and easier to understand. But you have one more option – you can use the verb "아니다," "to not be," instead of the entire conjugation.

"아니다:"

- Present: 아닌지
- Future: 아닐지
- Past: 아니었는지

You can only use "아니다" in this way ("whether *or not*") with Descriptive Verbs.

내일도 오늘처럼 더울지 **아니면 안 더울지** 궁금해요.

"I'm wondering if tomorrow will be hot too like today or not."

지금 철수가 바쁜지 **아닌지** 알려주세요.

"Please tell me whether or not Cheolsoo is busy now."

어제 그 시험이 어려웠는지 **아니었는지** 알고 싶어요.

"I want to know if that test yesterday was difficult or not."

Additional Usage

This section is also in purple, as it is an intermediate concept. Please skip this section as well if you skipped the previous purple section.

서울이 이렇게 추울지 알고 있었어요?

"Did you know that Seoul would be this cold?"

Notice that the above section has no "whether" or "if." This is because this form has a deeper meaning than just "whether" and "if" – **it's used for talking about things that are unknown**. It's not a new concept though; using "whether" and "if" already signifies in English that we're talking about something that is unknown. "I don't know whether he likes K-pop" expresses that the speaker does not know something – "whether he likes K-pop" is unknown. This form is therefore also used with words such as *what, who, how, why, where, when, and how much*.

나는 뭐가 가장 쉬운지 알고 싶어요.

"I want to know what is the easiest."

누가 제일 똑똑했는지 맞춰 보세요.

"Try to guess who is the smartest."

나는 네가 어떻게 했는지 궁금해.

"I'm curious how you did it."

그가 왜 그렇게 했는지 이해할 수 없어요.

"I can't understand why he did that."

어디서부터 시작해야 할지 고민이다.

"I'm worried where I'll have to start from."

세일 기간이 언제까지인지 아세요?

"Do you know when the sale period is until?"

당신이 한국말을 어디서 배우고 있는지 가르쳐 주세요.

"Please teach me where you are learning Korean."

This form has a 3rd usage as well, for saying "How to~." I won't cover it here, because there are a few more ways to say "How to~," but here's an example using this form.

나는 김치를 어떻게 만드는지 알고 있다.

"I know how to make kimchi."

Conclusion

Don't stress about the parts in purple – in fact, skip them if you're not yet confident with the basics. And remember that practicing what you learn is the best way to get better at Korean, so keep practicing and keep studying. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 14: "When" and "If"

There are two common ways to express "when" and "if" in Korean. Let's go over each of them.

verb stem + (으)면

Take the verb stem (the verb with the "다" removed), and add "으면" if it ends in a consonant, or "면" if it ends in a vowel.

"결혼하다" would become "결혼하면."

"먹다" would become "먹으면."

"비싸다" would become "비싸면."

"어렵다" would become "어려우면."

- Remember that certain Descriptive Verbs (such as ones that end in "ㅁ") have special conjugation rules (see Episode 2 for more information).

verb stem + (ㄹ/을) 때

Take the verb stem and add "을 때" if it ends in a consonant, or "ㄹ 때" if it ends in a vowel.

"결혼하다" would become "결혼할 때."

"먹다" would become "먹을 때"

"비싸다" would become "바쌀 때"

"어렵다" would become "어려울 때"

Differences

Let's go over the differences between these two forms.

verb stem + (으)면

In English, "when" and "if" can often be interchanged.

시간이 있으면 같이 밥 먹자.

"If you have time, let's eat together."

This sentence could also be translated as, "When you have time, let's eat together."

This form is used for talking about a **hypothetical situation**. Therefore, it can sometimes translate as "when" and other times as "if."

오늘 비가 오면 밖에 나가지 말자.

"If it rains today, let's not go outside."

"밖(에)" means "outside," and "나가다" means "to go out."

빨리 안 하면 죽어!

"If you don't do it right away, you're dead!"

부모님에게 친절하면 생일 선물을 많이 받을 거예요.

"If you are nice to your parents, you will get many birthday presents."

"친절하다" means "to be nice/kind."

verb stem + (ㄹ/을) 때

The word "때" literally means "time," such as "the time when." Two examples are the sentences, "The last time when I went to school," or "The time I got married." **This form is only used when you want to refer to the actual event in time.**

저는 학교에 있을 때 공부해요.

"When I am at school, I study." Or you could say, "The times when I'm at school, I study."

고양이가 밥 먹을 때 시끄러워요.

"The cat is noisy when it eats." Or you could say, "The times when the cat eats, it's noisy."

"시끄럽다" means "to be noisy/loud."

Comparison

See if you can guess which of these two sentences is more correct. *I'll give you a hint, they're both grammatically correct, but one of them sounds rather silly.*

A. 결혼하면 요리를 많이 할 거예요.

"When we get married, we're going to cook a lot!"

B. 결혼할 때 요리를 많이 할 거예요.

"When we get married, we're going to cook a lot!"

Take a moment to think about what each of these examples mean literally, using the notes we went over. When you've decided, read the next line.

Did you choose A? That's correct. But what if you guessed B? I said that both sentences are grammatically correct, so let's take a look at what each of them mean.

A. 결혼하면 요리를 많이 할 거예요.

"When we get married, we're going to cook a lot!"

This sentence uses the "verb stem + (으)면" form, so it means that this is a **hypothetical situation**. *"If we get married, or when we get married ("in the event that we get married"), we're going to cook a lot!"*

B. 결혼할 때 요리를 많이 할 거예요.

"When we get married, we're going to cook a lot!"

This sentence uses the "verb stem + (ㄹ/을) 때" form, so it means that this is **referring to the actual event in time**. *"At the time when we get married (in the chapel, at the very moment when we become husband and wife, while I'm in my tuxedo, and you're in your dress), we are going to cook a lot!"* Although **B** is grammatically correct, it sounds silly.

Example Sentences with "때"

Here are some examples of correct ways to use the "verb stem + (ㄹ/을) 때" form.

숙제를 할 때 집중해야 돼요.

"You need to focus when you do homework."

"집중하다" means "to concentrate/focus."

내가 어렸을 때 한국말을 못 했어.

"When I was young, I couldn't speak Korean."

"어리다" means "to be young (as a child)," and "어렸다" is the past tense of "어리다."

운전할 때 핸드폰을 쓰지 마세요.

"Don't use your cell phone when you're driving."

"운전하다" means "to drive (a vehicle)," and "핸드폰" means "cell phone" (literally "hand phone").

Conclusion

Once you understand the differences between these two forms, start using them as much as possible. Practicing what you learn is the best way to get better at Korean, so keep practicing and keep studying. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 15: Past Tense

Let's jump right into the conjugation rules for making the past tense.

verb stem + (아/어/etc) + "ㅂ" + ("다" or conjugate it)

Start with the verb stem (the verb, minus the "다"), and add "아" or "어" (etc) – this part is determined in the same way as when you conjugate the "요" form (see Episode 2). Then attach "ㅂ" to the bottom of it. Finally, add a "다" if you just want the **plain form** of your new past tense verb, or conjugate it to any other form (see Episode 17 to learn about the plain form).

If it's easier for you, here's how to turn the "요" form into past tense directly:

"요" form – "요" + "ㅂ" + ("다" or conjugate it)

Here are just a couple of common ways to conjugate the past tense:

"요" form: (see Episode 2) ⇒ Add "어요"

"~니다" Form: (see Episode 21) ⇒ Add "습니다." Or add "습니까?"

Let's take the verb "공부하다," "to study."

- Get the "요" form ⇒ 공부해요
- Remove the "요" ⇒ 공부해
- Add "ㅂ" ⇒ 공부했
- Conjugate the ending *any way you'd like* ⇒ 공부했어요 / 공부했습니다 / etc

Take the verb "놀다," "to play," or "to hang out."

- Get the "요" form ⇒ 놀아요
- Remove the "요" ⇒ 놀아
- Add "ㅂ" ⇒ 놀았
- Conjugate the ending *any way you'd like* ⇒ 놀았어요 / 놀았습니다 / etc

Take the verb "덥다," "to be hot."

- Get the "요" form ⇨ 더워요
- Remove the "요" ⇨ 더워
- Add "ㅜ" ⇨ 더웠
- Conjugate the ending *any way you'd like* ⇨ 더웠어요 / 더웠습니다 / etc

Example Sentences

저는 집에 **갔어요**.

"I went home."

친구에게서 카드를 **받았습니다**.

"I received a card from a friend."

어제 서울이 아주 **추웠습니다**.

"Yesterday Seoul was very cold."

맛있는 음식을 **준비했어요**.

"I prepared some delicious food."

집에 누가 **있었어?**

"Who was at home?"

Two exceptions: "이다" and "아니다"

"이다," "to be," is conjugated differently in the past tense.

consonant + 이었(다) / vowel + 였(다)

After a consonant, add "이었" and then add either "다" (if you want plain form) or conjugate the end. After a vowel, add "였" and then add "다" or conjugate it.

저도 옛날에 학생**이었다**.

"I was also a student a long time ago."

"옛날에" means "a long time ago."

This could have also been conjugated to "이었어요" or "이었습시다," for example.

정말 재미있는 하루**였다**.

"It was a really fun day."

"하루" means "a/one day."

This could have also been conjugated to "였어요" or "였습시다," for example.

"아니다," "to not be," conjugates as "아니**었다**."

사실 그는 연예인이 **아니었어요**.

"Actually, he was not a celebrity."

"사실" means "actually" or "in reality," and "연예인" means "a celebrity."

This could have also been conjugated to "아니었습니다," for example.

Conclusion

Past Tense is simple, but takes practice to become quick at making it. As always, practicing what you learn will be the best way to reinforce these concepts. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 16: Future Tense

Although it's called "future tense," it's really more of a *probable* future tense than a *definite* future tense –the Korean "future tense" might translate to "will," or it might translate to "would," depending on how it's used. For now, just know that the future tense is used to talk about things that "*probably* will happen," and not things that "*definitely* will happen."

There are two ways to make the future tense, and they're each a little different.

1. verb stem + 겠(다)

Take the verb stem and add "겠," then add "다" (if you want the plain form) or conjugate it any way you'd like. Most often (as the future tense) it is used with the polite "~니다" form.

언제 **하겠습니까?**

"When will you do it?"

"저는 학교에 **가겠습니다.**"

"I will go to school."

2. verb stem + (ㄹ/을) + 것(이다)

Take the verb stem and add "을" if it ends in a consonant, or "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel. Then add "것" and conjugate "이다" any way you'd like ("것이다" can also become just "거다").

철수는 피자를 **먹을 거예요.**

"Cheolsoo will eat pizza."

그래서 **안 할 거야?**

"So you're not going to do it?"

"~겠다" vs. "ㄹ 것이다" (Form 1 vs. Form 2)

You're probably wondering what the difference is between these two forms.

Form 1 ("~겠습니다") sounds a bit more polite than Form 2 ("ㄹ 것이다"). **I would recommend that you use Form 2 if you're not sure.** Because Form 1 is more polite, it's often used with the "~니다" form when making regular statements ("I will~, " etc); if you choose to use Form 1, be polite when using it. It is also used in other non-polite situations, but I can go over that in another lesson.

The actual difference between Form 1 and Form 2

As this section is in purple, please skip it if this is your first time learning the future tense. For all those who are interested, here is the actual difference between the two forms:

Using **Form 1 puts more emphasis on the verb**, and using **Form 2 puts more emphasis on the subject** of that verb.

내가 하겠다.

This sentence would be similar to saying, "I **will** do it."

내가 할 거다.

This sentence would be similar to saying, "**I** will do it."

The emphasis is not this strong, but I've exaggerated it to illustrate the difference.

Example Sentences

한국은 여름에 정말 **덥**겠습니다.

"Korea will be really hot in the summer."

한국은 겨울에 정말 **추**울 거예요.

"Korea will be really cold in the winter."

Notice that certain Descriptive Verbs (such as those ending in "ㅁ") still retain their special conjugation rules.

어디에서 **놀** 거예요?

"Where will we play at?"

Verbs ending in "ㄹ" used with Form 2 simply drop the "ㄹ" before conjugating.

집에서 뭘 **먹을 거예요?**

"What will you eat at home?"

"뭘" is a shortened form of "무엇을."

내일 우리 할머니 댁에서 **만날 겁니다.**

"Tomorrow we will meet at my grandmother's house."

"댁" is an extra polite way to refer to someone's house (instead of "집").

그가 **심심하지 않겠습니까?**

"Will he not be bored?"

"심심하다" means "to be bored."

Notice how the future tense works in negative sentences as well (see Episode 7 for more information on making negative sentences).

저는 내일 학교에 **안 갈 거예요.**

"I will not go to school tomorrow."

그 사람에게 아무것도 **말하지 않을 거야.**

"I will not say anything to that person."

"아무것도" means "nothing," and is used in negative sentences.

Conclusion

Once again, if you're not sure which form to use in regular conversation, use Form 2 – verb stem + (ㄹ/을) 것(이다) – as it's the most versatile. And practice it as much as possible.

Practice will make these concepts stick. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 17: Plain Form

The “plain form” is used quite often in Korean, but not in all situations. **It should never be used in polite conversations by itself.**

When to use the plain form

Writing:

- News articles
- Essays
- Example sentences (in textbooks)

Speech:

- Talking to oneself
- Casual statements to friends

Grammar Forms:

- ❖ (frequently used in grammar forms)

Newspapers and essays are written using the plain form since they’re **not specifically directed toward someone** – you won’t see a newspaper article or an essay written in another form besides plain form, unless it was written specifically to be read in front of an audience. Example sentences (including my own) are also often written in the plain form.

Plain form is used when talking to oneself; in English, we may say things like “Oh, I forgot!” to ourselves. In Korean, it is the same. As long as the statement isn’t directed at the person you are speaking to (meaning, as long as you’re not ending your sentences with plain form), you can use plain form in any situation for speaking to yourself.

Plain form is also used when making a casual statement to a friend. By *statement*, I mean something that that would be similar to an *announcement* (I’ll give examples in this lesson).

Plain form cannot be used for making questions.

Plain form is used in many grammar forms, such as for quoting people (see Episode 19).

How to make the plain form

Here are the rules for conjugating the plain form:

Past Tense: (see Episode 15)

- ❖ verb stem + (아/어/etc) + **ㅆ다**

Present Tense:

- ❖ Action Verbs:
 - verb stem + (ㄴ/는) + **다**
- ❖ Descriptive Verbs:
 - (no change)

Future Tense: (see Episode 16)

- ❖ verb stem + **겠**다
- ❖ verb stem + (ㄹ/을) + **것이다** (“것이다” can also be just “거다”)

If you've already learned the past and future tenses, the only new one here is present tense. For Action Verbs, take the verb stem and add “ㄴ” if it ends in a vowel, or “는” if it ends in a consonant; then add “다.” For Descriptive Verbs, just leave them as they are (*Descriptive Verbs are already in plain form in the present tense*)

Example Sentences

Here are examples of the plain form using each of these three tenses:

철수는 병원에 **간다**.

“Cheolsoo goes to the hospital.”

“병원” means “hospital.”

나는 과자를 **먹는다**.

“I eat snacks.”

“과자” means “a snack” or “snacks.”

Since plain form isn't used in polite situations, just use “나” when referring to yourself (instead of “저”).

GO! Billy Korean

엄마는 우리와 함께 **논다**.

"Mom plays together with us."

If the verb stem ends in "ㄹ" (here, "놀다"), just remove the "ㄹ" before conjugating it.

내가 **실수했다**.

"I made a mistake."

"실수하다" means "to make a mistake."

내일 친구와 한국말을 **공부할 거다**.

"Tomorrow I'll study Korean with a friend."

오늘은 진짜 **춥다**.

"Today is really cold."

한국어 시험이 아주 **어려웠다**.

"The Korean test was very difficult."

밥을 안 먹으면 **배가 고플 거다**.

"If you do not eat, you will be hungry."

안 오면 내가 이걸 다 **먹는다!**

"If you don't come I'm eating all of this!"

"이걸" is a short and informal form of "이것을."

I mentioned that the plain form can be used to make a casual statement to a friend; you wouldn't say this sentence to someone older than you or in a polite conversation, but it is fine to use it to friends, almost **as if you're announcing it to someone**.

엘비스는 건물을 **나갔다**.

"Elvis left the building."

Negative Plain Form

To make negative sentences with the plain form, first change the verb to a negative form, then apply the same rules as above. Simple, right!

Let me show you what it would look like (using “~지 않다”). **You can ignore this list below if you already understand the same rules above.**

Past Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + **지 않았다**

Present Tense:

- ❖ Action Verbs:
 - verb stem + **지 않는다**
- ❖ Descriptive Verbs:
 - verb stem + **지 않다**

Future Tense:

- ❖ verb stem + **지 않겠다**
- ❖ verb stem + **지 않을 것이다** (“것이다” can also be just “거다”)

Note that you can also make sentences negative other ways, such as using “안” (see Episode 7 to learn about how to make negative sentences).

어제는 별로 **피곤하지 않았다**.

“Yesterday I wasn't particularly tired.”

“별로” means “particularly” and is used in negative sentences.

나는 술을 **안 마신다**.

“I don't drink alcohol.”

“마시다” means “to drink (something),” and “술” means alcohol.

그 사람은 **도와주지 않을 거다**.

“That person will not help.”

“도와주다” means “to help (someone).”

Two Small Exceptions

The verbs “있다” and “없다” are exceptions. Although they are normally classified as Action Verbs in other grammar forms (see Episode 13), here they act like Descriptive Verbs – their plain forms are simply “있다” and “없다.”

Conclusion

Now that you know the plain form, you’re going to notice it a lot all around you. Try reading a news article – even if you can’t understand all of it, you’ll see the plain form everywhere. Surprise your Korean friends by talking to yourself in Korean; just don’t talk to yourself too much or they’ll think you’re crazy! Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 18: The strong "if"

Before going through this lesson, make sure you have a good understanding of the "(으)면" form first (see Episode 14). We learned before that the "(으)면" form is used to express a **hypothetical situation** – today's form is used to express a **stronger hypothetical situation**.

내가 한국에 **가면** 한국말을 많이 배울 거야.

"If (or when) I go to Korea I will learn a lot of Korean."

This sentence uses the regular "(으)면" form.

내가 한국에 **간다면** 한국말을 많이 배울 거야.

"**If** I go to Korea I will learn a lot of Korean."

This sentence uses the new form that we will be learning today.

Plain Form + 면

And that's all you need to do (see Episode 17 to learn how to make the plain form). You can use the plain form in any tense that you'd like.

한국말을 열심히 **공부한다면** 신문도 읽을 수 있을 거예요.

"**If** you study Korean hard, you'll even be able to read the newspaper."

"신문" means "newspaper."

타임 머신이 **있다면** 얼마나 좋을까?

"How nice would it be **if** you had a time machine?"

오늘도 너무 **춥다면** 집에서 놀자.

"**If** today is also too cold, let's play inside."

어제 정말로 브래드 피트를 **만났다면** 증거를 보여주세요.

"**If** you really met Brad Pitt yesterday, show me proof."

"증거" means "proof" or "evidence."

어차피 한국어를 **배울 거라면** 한국으로 가는 게 어때?

If you're going to learn Korean anyway, how about going to Korea?"

"어차피" means "in any case" or "anyway."

When used in this form, "**이다**" **changes to become "(이)라"** ("(이)라면"). After a consonant it becomes "이라" and after a vowel it simply becomes "라."

"아니다" also **changes to become "아니라"** ("아니라면").

만약에 내일 지구가 **멸망한다면** 뭐할 거야?

"What would you do **if** the world ended tomorrow?"

"멸망하다" means "to be destroyed" or "to collapse."

"만약에" means "in case" or "by chance," and is often used with this strong hypothetical "if" form. **Adding "만약에" makes the "if" feeling a bit stronger**; because of that, you'll often see them used together, so feel free to use it yourself as well.

수학 시험이 **어려웠다면** 튜터를 만나보세요.

If the math test was difficult, try meeting a tutor."

"수학" means "math," and "튜터" means "tutor."

Conclusion

Make sure you're adjusted to using the regular "(으)면" form first before diving into this form, but once you do, use it whenever you'd like to make your hypothetical sentences a bit stronger. And remember to practice what you learn, and you'll remember it much better.



Learn Korean Ep. 19: Quotations and more

In English we sometimes use the word "that" to mark a quotation. "He *said* **that** he loved her." Or, "I *heard* **that** you told him." Korean has a similar way of doing this

1. Statements: Plain Form + 고 + (verb)

This form is for making any **statement**; a statement is, well, a statement. A question is not a statement, and a suggestion is not a statement. We'll go over how to quote those next.

Just take the Plain Form (see Episode 17) and add "고," and finally add another verb – the other verb will often be something like "to say" ("말하다") or "to hear" ("듣다"). An English example would be "I *said* that he went to school." Or, "I *heard* that he went to school."

그가 날 사랑한다고 말했다.

"He said that he loves me."

동생이 내일 싸이 콘서트에 간다고 했다.

"My younger sibling said that they're going to a PSY concert tomorrow."

"동생" means "a younger brother/sister."

When making a quotation, "말하다" and just "하다" have the same meaning; here, notice how we just used "하다" at the end – it still means "말하다."

너 방금 내가 바보라고 했어?

"Did you just say that I'm stupid?"

When making a quotation, "이다" becomes "(이)라고" ("이라고" after a consonant, and "라고" after a vowel). "아니다" becomes "아니라고."

"방금" means "just now" or "just a moment ago."

생강이 감기에 좋다고 들었어.

"I heard that ginger is good for colds."

"생강" means "ginger," and "감기" means "a cold."

2. Questions: verb stem + 냐고 + (verb)

This form is used for questions, such as when restating something that someone asked. Take the verb stem and add 냐고, then attach another verb – the other verb will most often be the verb “to ask” (“물어보다”). An English example would be, “I **asked**, ‘Did he go to school?’”

나는 철수한테 영희가 누구냐고 물어봤다.

“I asked Cheolsoo who is Yeonghee.”

제가 한국 사람이냐고요?

“Did you ask if I’m a Korean?”

You’ll often notice the last verb is missing – this is why I put “verb” in parentheses in the rules. It’s not required, because here it will be understood to be “물어보다” anyway.

There is an exception; when using this form with verb stems ending in “ㄹ,” just remove the “ㄹ” and conjugate normally; “놀다” would become “노냐고.”

3. “Let’s”: verb stem + 자고 + (verb)

An example of a “let’s” sentence would be, “I said **let’s** go to school.” Take the verb stem and add “자고,” then attach another verb – the most common verb used with this is “to say” (“말하다”), or just “하다.”

엄마한테 해외 여행을 가자고 했어요.

“I told my mom let’s go on an overseas trip.”

“해외 여행” means “an overseas trip.”

오늘은 여기서 그만하자고요?

“Did you say let’s stop here for today?”

“그만하다” means “to stop” or “to quit.”

Notice the last verb is missing here too. The verb will be understood to be “to say.”

You can leave out the verb in parentheses in all three of these forms, if you'd like, as it will be understood anyway.

Conclusion

Making quotations is simple, as long as you know the plain form well. Practice these by making your own quotations – try a few from each of the three types. You'll find them to be very useful. Also, anytime you didn't hear or understand what someone said, or just want them to repeat themselves, try saying “**뭐라고요?**” (“What did you say?”)



Learn Korean Ep. 20: "And"

There are a few different ways to say "and," depending on how you're using it – whether you're connecting nouns ("a dog **and** a cat"), connecting verbs ("I ate lunch **and** ate dinner"), or starting a sentence ("**And** today I met him."). English uses the same "and," but Korean uses a separate form for each of these cases.

1. Connecting Nouns: 과/와 (polite), 하고 (normal), (이)랑 (casual)

There are three options here when connecting nouns, but don't worry. **If you're learning for your first time, just learn the polite form (과/와).**

Polite: 과/와

Use "과" after a consonant, or "와" after a vowel.

This form isn't strongly polite or formal. It's only polite when compared to the other two.

저는 사과**와** 오렌지를 샀어요.

"I bought apples and oranges."

소금**과** 후추 좀 주세요.

"Please give me some salt and pepper."

"소금" means "salt," and "후추" means "(black) pepper."

"좀 주세요" can be used after a noun, and means "Please give me *some*~."

Normal: 하고

This form isn't polite or informal, so **use it anywhere you'd like.**

고양이**하고** 개 중에 뭘 더 좋아해?

"Between cats and dogs, what do you like more?"

"뭘" is a shortened form of "무엇을."

"더" is an adverb that means "more."

밥**하고** 김치를 먹었다.

"I ate rice and kimchi."

Casual: (이)랑

This form isn't rude like other casual forms of speech, but it's not used in polite situations.

Feel free to use this form when speaking to friends. Use "이랑" after a consonant, and "랑" after a vowel.

이거랑 저거 주세요.

"Give me this and that."

노트북이랑 핸드폰을 선물로 받았다.

"I got a notebook computer and a cell phone as a present."

"노트북" means "notebook computer," and "핸드폰" means "cell phone" (lit. "hand phone").

2. Connecting Verbs: verb stem + 고

Take the verb stem and add "고." The verb stem can be in any tense you'd like (e.g. past tense, future tense, present tense).

오늘 밥 먹고 설거지를 해야 돼요.

"Today I have to eat and do the dishes."

"설거지(를) 하다" means "to do the dishes."

숙제를 다 했고 이제 놀러 간다.

"I did all of my homework, and now I'm going to play."

"놀러 가다" means "to go play."

3. Starting Sentences: 그리고

When starting a sentence with "and," just use "그리고," and *that's all*.

그리고 저는 잘 생겼습니다.

"And I am handsome."

Conclusion

Make sure to learn all three of these forms, especially the first two. Connecting nouns **and** verbs is one of the most common things that you'll do when speaking Korean. **And** remember to *practice, practice, and practice!*



Learn Korean Ep. 21: How to speak polite Korean

Unless your purpose for learning Korean is to communicate only with friends at school, or maybe with a boyfriend or girlfriend, knowing how to speak polite Korean will be necessary and beneficial to everyone. In this lesson I'll first go over the situations where it's **okay** to speak casually in Korean – by “casually” I mean using slang, removing the “요” at the end of verb conjugation, etc. Then I'll go over ways to speak politely.

When it's okay to speak casually:

In some situations, it can be **better** to speak casually – or at the very least, acceptable.

- ✓ Close friends of the same age or younger
- ✓ Boyfriend / Girlfriend
- ✓ Small children
- ✓ Family members
- ✓ Animals
- ✓ When given permission

By “close friend,” I mean someone who you're already well acquainted with; **it's not acceptable to use casual speech the first time you're meeting someone**, even if they're being introduced as a new friend. Make sure they're the same age as you or younger as well before speaking casually.

It's fine to use casual language with a boyfriend or girlfriend, even if they are older than you. However, **some couples might still prefer using at least some level of politeness when speaking to each other**, so it depends on the couple's wants. In general, it's acceptable.

When speaking with small children, it's okay to speak casually. You're free to speak politely as well, but it's not expected.

It's also fine to speak casually to other family members, including parents, though you may sometimes hear people speak politely to their parents – this is simply a matter of choice.

When speaking to animals (these situations can happen), **only use casual speech**. It can be seen as impolite to speak politely to an animal, while speaking the same level to a human.

On a case by case basis, some Koreans may give you permission to speak casually, even if they are older than you. In these cases, feel free to do so.

For all other situations, you will need to speak polite Korean. But speaking polite Korean isn't as difficult, or tedious, as it may sound. Let's go over how to do it.

How to speak polite Korean:

- ✓ Use the "~요 form" or "~니다 form"
- ✓ Use 저 instead of 나
- ✓ Avoid slang and abbreviations
- ✓ Use particles and markers
- ✓ Use polite forms of particles

Use the "~요" form, or the "~니다" form, when speaking (for how to conjugate the "~요" form, see Episode 2). I'll go over how to conjugate the "~니다" form in this lesson.

Use "저" when referring to yourself instead of "나." Also, **avoid using "너"** when referring to other people in any non-casual situation. Even in many casual situations, "너" can sound rude, as it is considered another step lower in politeness; the same goes for calling out to people by saying "야."

Avoid slang, of course, but also be careful of abbreviations. A common abbreviation is "게," which is a shortened form of "것이." It isn't rude in itself at all, but it should be avoided in situations where you need to be polite.

Use particles (such as the Topic Marker, the Subject Marker, and Object Markers) wherever they normally should be used. It's common when speaking informally to leave them off, but it's proper to return them to their natural habitat when speaking politely.

Use the polite forms of particles when you're able to. An example would be using "께" instead of "에게" ("to" or "from" a person – see Episode 8) whenever referring to someone who you should normally show respect to, such as a teacher ("선생님") or when saying "부모님." It would be best to use "께" in these situations, or perhaps "에게" if you're not certain, but it would be a bit impolite to use "한테(서)," which is casual. Another example is using "와/과" for connecting words together, instead of the casual "(이)랑" (see Episode 20).

Good examples:

선생님께 선물을 받았어요.

"I received a present from the teacher."

친구와 밥을 먹었어요.

"I ate with a friend."

Bad examples:

선생님한테서 선물을 받았어요.

"I received a present from the teacher."

친구랑 밥 먹었어요.

"I ate with a friend."

This sentence is actually correct, and fine to use when speaking in a regular situation (since it uses the "~요" form), but it does not sound that polite because of its use of "랑;" it should therefore not be used in any formal situation.

There are other ways to sound polite as well, but these are the most basic and essential tips to follow.

"~니다" form

You may have heard that the "~니다" form (e.g. "입니다," or "합니다") is only used in formal situations. While it's true that it is used in formal situations, it can also be used in regular situations when the speaker wants to sound a little extra polite – such as meeting people for the first time who are older than you, or for job interviews. Here's how to conjugate it:

verb stem + ㅂ니다/습니다

Just take the verb stem (the verb with the “다” removed) and add either “ㅂ니다” if it ends in a vowel, or “습니다” if it ends in a consonant.

Take the verb “가다,” “to go.”

1. Remove the “다” ⇨ “가”
2. It ends in a vowel, so add “ㅂ니다” ⇨ “갑니다”

Take the verb “먹다,” “to eat.”

1. Remove the “다” ⇨ “먹”
2. It ends in a consonant, so add “습니다” ⇨ “먹습니다”

The only exception is for verbs that end with “ㄹ” – in these cases, simply remove the “ㄹ.”

Take the verb “살다,” “to live.”

1. Remove the “다” ⇨ “살”
2. It ends in “ㄹ,” so remove it ⇨ “사”
3. Now it ends in a vowel, so add “ㅂ니다” ⇨ “삽니다”

This can work with any verb tense. Here are a few more examples:

Let’s try “가다” in the past tense (see Episode 15):

1. Take the past tense of “가다,” without any additional conjugation ⇨ “갔다”
2. Remove the “다” ⇨ “갔”
3. It ends in a consonant, so add “습니다” ⇨ “갔습니다”

Note that **all past tense forms will add “습니다”** since all past tense verb stems end in “ㅅ”.

Let’s try “먹다” in the future tense with “~겠다” (see Episode 16):

1. Take the future tense of “먹다,” without any additional conjugation ⇨ “먹겠다”
2. Remove the “다” ⇨ “먹겠”
3. It ends in a consonant, so add “습니다” ⇨ “먹겠습니다”

Note that all future tense conjugations using “~겠다” will add “습니다.” However, there is one more way to make the future tense, as we learned in Episode 16.

Let’s try “먹다” in the future tense with “ㄹ/을 것이다” (see Episode 16):

1. Take the future tense of “먹다,” without any additional conjugation ⇒ “먹을 것이다”
2. Remove the “다” ⇒ “먹을 것이”
3. It ends in a vowel, so add “습니다” ⇒ “먹을 것입니다” (or “먹을 겁니다”)

Here are some example sentences using the “~니다” form:

학교에 **갑니다**.

“I go to school.”

컴퓨터를 하고 **있습니다**.

“I am using the computer.”

“컴퓨터(를) 하다” means “to use the computer.”

오늘 운동을 **했습니다**.

“I exercised today.”

“운동(을) 하다” means “to exercise.”

한국어 시험이 **어려웠습니까?**

“Was the Korean test difficult?”

클럽에 가서 춤을 **춥니다**.

“I’m going to a club and dancing.”

“클럽” means “a club,” and “춤(을) 추다” means “to dance.”

클럽에 가서 춤을 **출 겁니다**.

“I will go to a club and dance.”

“겁니다” is another way to say “것입니다” (future tense), and is still polite.

음식이 입에 맞으면 **좋겠습니다**.

“I hope that the food is to your liking.”

“입에 맞다” means “to be to one’s liking (food)” – it literally means “to match the mouth.”

Read over this lesson again, and practice making your own sentences using the “~니다” form. Being polite in Korean, when in the right situations, will earn you respect from others, and show Koreans that you appreciate and truly understand their culture.



Learn Korean Ep. 22: "Because"

There are a few ways to say "because," and they're each a bit different. Let's go over the most important ones you should know.

(noun / v.s. + 기) + 때문 + (에 / 이다)

This is the **polite and standard way** of saying "because." **If you only want to learn one way to say "because" from this lesson, then this is the one you're looking for.**

To simplify this form, just take a noun (or a verb turned into a noun using "기") and add "때문." Then, depending how you're using it, add either "에" or a conjugation of "이다." When used to connect sentences together (in the middle of a sentence), attach "에." When you're ending the sentence with it, attach a conjugation of the verb "이다."

저는 미국 사람이기 **때문에** 피자를 좋아해요.

"Because I am American, I like pizza."

내일 학교에 **가기 때문에** 오늘 일찍 자야 돼요.

"Because I go to school tomorrow, I need to sleep early today."

"일찍" is an adverb that means "early."

너 **때문이야!**

"It's because of you!"

Using "때문" after a person has a negative meaning. Instead of using "때문," use "thanks to~" – "thanks to~" is "덕분."

아빠 **덕분이에요.**

"It's thanks to you, dad."

v.s. + (으)니까

Take the verb stem and add "으니까" after a consonant, or "니까" after a vowel. This is an **informal way** of saying "because." It's not rude, but it shouldn't be used in polite situations.

키캣이 곰이니까 털이 많아요.

"Because *Keykat* is a bear, he has a lot of fur."

"곰" means "a bear," and "털" means "hair (not on the head)."

내가 공부했으니까 시험을 잘 볼 거다.

"Because I studied, I will do well on the test."

"시험(을) 잘 보다" means "to do well on a test" ("시험(을) 보다" means "to take a test").

v.s. + (어/아/etc) + 서

Take the verb stem and add "아" or "어" (etc), as normally added when conjugating the "요" form (see Episode 2 for how to conjugate the "요" form). This form is for **connecting a cause and effect**.

밥을 많이 먹어서 배가 불러요.

"I'm full because I ate a lot of food."

"배(가) 부르다" means "to be full (not hungry)."

잠을 조금밖에 안 자서 피곤해요.

"I'm tired because I sleep only a little."

"피곤하다" means "to be tired."

"조금밖에" means "only a little" (used in negative sentences).

저는 남자라서 군대에 가야 됩니다.

"I have to go to the military because I am a man."

"군대" means "the military."

When using "이다" with this form, it becomes "이라서" after a consonant, and "라서" after a vowel.

This form is also used in another way, but I won't cover that in this lesson. For now, just know that this form can be used to mean "because" when connecting a cause and an effect.

Intermediate Notes

I'd like to go over a few more ways to say "because" in Korean. These are all intermediate, so please skip them if this is your first time learning the above material, as they will probably not be useful to you yet.

v.s. + 기에

This form is less common. **In addition to "because," this form also has the feeling of "so."**

엄마가 나가셨길래 친구를 초대했다.

"I invited a friend because my mother left."

"My mom left, so I invited a friend."

"길래" is a more casual, spoken form of "기에," but has the same meaning.

v.s. + 느라고

This form is used to mean "because" whenever the reason is negative. In English, we might say "I'm tired because I exercised too hard." This form can therefore be **used to express regret**.

화장을 하느라고 약속에 늦었다.

"I was late for an appointment because I was doing my makeup."

"화장(을) 하다" means "to do makeup."

"약속에 늦다" means "to be late for an appointment."

Conclusion

I recommend practicing these three ways of making "because" as much as possible. And if you only pick one, focus on the "때문" form.



Learn Korean Ep. 23: “에” and “에서”

In a previous lesson, I went over how to say “to” and “from” a person (see Episode 8). Today we’ll learn how to say “to” and “from” a location, as well as “to” and “from” a time. While doing so, we’ll also learn how to use the particles “에” and “에서.”

에

1. You can use “에” to mean “to,” as in “to a location,” but not “to a person.”

저는 학교**에** 가요.

“I go to school.”

빨리 집**에** 와요.

“Come home quickly.” Or literally, “Come to home quickly.” Although English can sometimes leave out “to,” Korean will not leave out “에” after a destination.

2. You can also use “에” to show the location of where something or someone exists, such as with the verbs “있다” (“to exist”) and “없다” (“to not exist”). This can translate to “at” or “in.”

저는 학교**에** 있어요.

“I am at school.” Or, “I am in school.” Literally it means, “I exist in (or at) school.”

사무실**에** 연필이 없어요.

“There are no pencils in the office.”

“사무실” means “office,” and “연필” means “pencil.”

Note that you can’t use the verb “이다” with “에” like this, since “이다” means “to be,” as in “to be equal to.” The sentence “저는 학교**에** **있어요**” would be correct, but “저는 학교**에** **이에요**” would be wrong.

에서

1. You can use "에서" to mean "from," as in "*from a location*," but not "from a person."

저는 미국**에서** 왔어요.

"I'm from America." Or literally, "I came from America."

"...병원**에서** 집에..."

"...from the hospital to home..."

2. You can also use "에서" to mean "at" or "in" a location, *whenever the verb following it is an action verb* – for example, you might say "I study **at** school," or "I study **in** the library." Here, "study" is an action verb, so you use "에서" to show where the action is taking place.

저는 도서관**에서** 공부해요.

"I study in the library."

그는 학교**에서** 밥을 먹어요.

"He eats at school."

철수는 주방**에서** 요리합니다.

"Cheolsoo cooks in the kitchen."

"주방" means "kitchen."

그 사람은 L.A.**에서** 살아요.

"That person lives in L.A."

Although the verb "살다" ("to live") is an action, you can also use it with "에" – this is just a special case that only applies to this verb, so it's optional.

그 사람은 LA.**에** 살아요.

"That person lives in L.A."

This means the same thing as the sentence above with "에서."

#시부터 #시까지

Using this form, you can say "to" and "from" a time. Just replace the "#" sign with a Korean number.

"부터" is another word that you can use to mean "from," but only when referring to a location or a time, and not a person. "까지" means "until" or "(up) to."

1시부터 3시까지. ("1시" = "한시" / "3시" = "세시")
"From one o'clock until/to three o'clock."

2시부터 10시까지. ("2시" = "두시" / "10시" = "열시")
"From two o'clock until/to ten o'clock."

Conclusion

The best way to get good at using "에" and "에서," as well as "부터" and "까지," is by practicing. Practice what you learn every day by making your own sentences, or by practicing speaking with a conversation partner.



Learn Korean Ep. 24: Progressive Tense

What is Progressive Tense? Here's an example:

지금 공부하고 있어요.

"Now I am studying."

The "am studying" part uses the progressive form. You can also think of the progressive form as the "**~ing form**" ("I am ~ing"). It's **used for talking about actions that are currently happening**.

verb stem + 고 있다

Add "고" to the verb stem, then add "있다" and conjugate it. Make sure that the verb stem you use is only a regular verb stem in the present tense ("먹다" would become "먹").

밥을 먹고 있습니다.

"I am eating."

공원에 가고 있어요.

"I am going to the park."

"공원" means "park."

이사할 준비를 하고 있어요.

"I am preparing to move."

"이사하다" means "to move (houses)," and "준비(를) 하다" means "to prepare."

Although the progressive form is used for actions that are currently happening, those actions don't have to be happening *right at the very moment* that you're speaking. In English, we could say the phrase, "**I am preparing to move**," even if we're at a restaurant talking with a friend, even though we're not preparing to move *while* we're eating at the restaurant. Because it's an action that's currently going on, we can use this form to express that.

여행 계획을 세우고 있어요.

"I am setting up travel plans."

"여행" means "travel" or "a trip," "계획" means "a plan," and "세우다" means "to set up."

어제 공부하고 있었어요.

"Yesterday I was studying."

In order to make the **past** progressive tense (e.g. this sentence), just conjugate the verb "있다" at the end to past tense, but leave the original verb stem (here "공부하다") as is. You can also make any tense you'd like simply by changing the tense of "있다" at the end.

내일 청소하고 있을 거예요.

"Tomorrow I will be doing cleaning."

"청소하다" means "to clean (house, etc)."

This sentence uses the **future** progressive tense, made by changing "있다" to future tense.

그는 학교를 다니고 있지 않아요.

"He is not going to school."

"다니다" means "to go (on a regular basis)."

To make the **negative** progressive tense, change "있다" to "있지 않다" and conjugate it.

Notes

Korean uses the progressive tense less than in English. For example, we might reply, "**I am going to the store**," if a friend asks us what we're doing, but in Korean it's fine to use the present tense for things like these.

지금 가게에 가요.

"Now I go to the store." Or, "Now I am going to the store."

The present tense also functions like the progressive form, but only when it's not important to express that the action is currently happening. **Whenever you want to stress that the action is going on currently, use the progressive tense.**

If you're confused whether or not you should stress that an action is currently happening or not, just uses the present tense.

Conclusion

The progressive tense is a great way to express that an action is currently going on, but the best way to know when and how to use it is through practice. Practice making a few sentences on your own using the progressive tense, and you'll find yourself using it in almost every Korean conversation.



Learn Korean Ep. 25: Plurals

In English we can say "cat" when we mean "one cat," or "cats" when we mean "more than one cat." Korean also has a way to make nouns plural, and it's even easier.

noun + 들

Simple, huh!

사람 "a person"

사람들 "people"

친구 "a friend"

친구들 "friends"

장난감 "a toy"

장난감들 "toys"

공부할 것 "something to study"

공부할 것들 "some things to study"

In English, it's required to use plurals when the quantity is more than one. In Korean, **"들" is only used to make a plural noun when you want to stress that there is more than one.**

All other times, it's not necessary to change a noun into a plural, since *all Korean singular nouns can already act as plurals.*

머리카락 "a hair" or "hairs" (or "hair" as a plural)

머리카락이 많이 빠졌어요.

"I lost a lot of hair."

"빠지다" means "to fall out."

원숭이 "a monkey" or "monkeys"

나는 원숭이를 좋아해.

"I like monkeys."

지우개 "an eraser" or "erasers"

지우개를 몇개 샀어요?

"How many erasers did you buy?"

Notice that in these examples, it's perfectly clear that the speaker means the plural. It wouldn't be necessary to say "I lost a lot of *hairs*." It would be strange to say "I like a *monkey*." Or, "How many *eraser* did you buy?" **It's not necessary to change regular nouns into plurals unless you want to stress that there are more than one in your sentence.**

However, any time you want to emphasize that there are more than one, feel free to use "들" to make a noun a plural.

Conclusion

Learn how to use "들" to change a noun into a plural, but only use it when you think it's necessary to show that there are more than one of something. However, don't be afraid to use it – it's still used often. But practice with it and you'll be using it in your Korean conversations in no time.



Learn Korean Ep. 26: "While"

This lesson will cover how to say "while," such as in the sentence, "I ate **while** running." Or, "I ate **while** you talked." English uses the same "while" for both of these, but Korean has two separate words depending on whether the same person is doing both actions, or different people are doing the actions.

verb stem + (으)면서

Take the verb stem and add "으면서" if it ends in a consonant, or "면서" if it ends in a vowel.

This form can be **used only when the same person is doing both actions**. You could use this form if you wanted to say "I ate while running." However, you could not use this form if you wanted to say "I ate while **you** talked."

나는 달리**면서** 밥을 먹었다.

"I ate while running."

"달리다" means "to run."

음악을 들**으면서** 청소했어요.

"I listened to music while doing cleaning."

팝콘을 먹**으면서** 영화를 봤어.

"I watched a movie while eating popcorn."

verb stem + (는) 동안에

Take the verb stem and attach "는" (for the present tense), then add "동안에." **You'll often see this form used with the progressive tense** (see Episode 24), but it can be used in any other tense you'd like.

This form can be **used when different people are doing the actions**. You could use this form if you wanted to say “I ate while **you** talked.” However, this form can also be **used when the same person is doing both actions** – just like the previous form.

내가 먹고 **있는 동안에** 네가 이야기했다.

“I ate while you talked.”

Remember to state who is doing the action whenever the same person isn't doing both.

시험을 **보는 동안에** 핸드폰을 쓰지 마세요.

“Don't use your cell phone while taking a test.”

화장실에 **있는 동안에** 전화가 왔다.

“I got a phone call while in the bathroom.”

“전화(가) 오다” means “to get a phone call” (literally, “a phone call comes”).

“화장실” means “bathroom.”

Advanced Notes

As this section is more advanced, it has been written in purple. **Please skip this section if it is your first time learning “while.”** There are two additional ways to say “while” in Korean.

verb + 가

Take the verb and attach “가.” By “verb,” I mean the original verb without any changes. This form also means “while,” and the difference is that this form is often **used to state something that happened “while” the first action was taking place.**

잠을 **자다가** 침대에서 떨어졌다.

“I fell down from the bed while I was sleeping.”

“침대” means “a bed” and “떨어지다” means “to fall down.”

걸어가다가 돈을 주웠다.

“While I was walking I picked up some money.”

“줍다” means “to pick up.”

verb stem + 고 있는 중에

Take the verb stem and add "고" and "있는" (this is using the progressive tense), then add "중에." The literal meaning of "중" is "middle," so this literally means "**in the middle of doing.**" As such, it can also be translated as "while doing."

공부하고 **있는 중에** 전화가 왔다.
"I got a phone call while studying."

Conclusion

Skip the above purple section if this is your first time learning "while," as the first two ways are really the most important ones to learn for now. Try making your own sentences with both of them; practicing what you study is the best way to become skilled at speaking Korean.



Learn Korean Ep. 27: Verb endings (Part 1)

In Korean, you can attach different endings to verbs in order to add extra meaning to the sentence. There are actually a **lot** of these, but this lesson will cover two of the most common ones.

v.s. + 지/죠

Take the verb stem and add “지” if your sentence is casual, or “죠” if your sentence is polite. Using this ending is like adding “**right?**” or “**isn’t it?**” or “**aren’t you?**” (etc) to the end of your sentence. You can use it to **request confirmation from the listener**.

맛있지?

“It’s good, right?”

“맛(이) 있다” means “to be delicious,” but can be translated as just “good” (used for food).

어제 학교에 안 갔죠?

“You didn’t go to school yesterday, did you?”

조금 더 빨리 먹지?

“Eat a little faster, okay?”

“조금 더” means “a little more” (adverb).

고양이는 물을 싫어하죠?

“Cats hate water, don’t they?”

“싫어하다” means “to hate.”

v.s. + 네/네요

Take the verb stem and add “네” if your sentence is casual, or “네요” if your sentence is polite. Using this makes your sentence almost like an **exclamation**, so you can **use it for things that you’re impressed with or surprised about**. In English, if we want to emphasize

something we'd simply change our intonation, but Korean can also use this verb ending as well.

맛있네!

"It's really good!"

한국말을 아주 잘 하네요!

"You're very good at Korean!"

몰랐네요.

"I didn't know that."

열심히 공부했네!

"You studied really hard!"

"열심히" means "diligently," or "hard" (adverb).

Conclusion

As always, practice what you're studying in order to really learn these concepts well. Our next lesson will also cover two more important verb endings in Korean.



Learn Korean Ep. 28: Verb endings (Part 2)

This lesson will cover two more common verb endings that you can use in Korean to add extra meaning to your sentences.

v.s. + 나/나요

Take the verb stem and add “나” if your sentence is casual, or “나요” if your sentence is polite. This verb ending is **only used with questions**. When you use it, it gives the feeling that you’re **especially curious to know something**.

맛있나?

“Is it good?”

“맛(이) 있다” means “to be delicious,” but can be translated as just “good” (used for food).

영어를 잘 할 수 있나요?

“Can you speak English well?”

오늘 학교에 갔나요?

“Did you go to school today?”

혹시 밥을 드셨나요?

“By chance did you eat?”

“혹시” means “by chance” (adverb).

“드시다” is an extra polite form of “먹다” that you can use when referring to people to whom you wish to show respect to.

v.s. + 군/군요

Take the verb stem and add “군” if your sentence is casual, or “군요” if your sentence is polite. This ending makes your sentence like an exclamation, but is a much **stronger exclamation** than just using 네(요), which we learned in the last episode. You can use this

ending whenever you're **surprised after realizing something**. This ending can translate to something like "Oh really" or "Wow" in some cases.

맛있군!

"It's really good!"

벌써 갔군요.

"Oh, he already left."

대학생이시군요.

"Oh, he's a college student."

"이시다" is an extra polite form of "이다," "to be."

연필이 더 없군요.

"There aren't any more pencils."

"연필" means "pencil."

I should also add that when using this verb ending with **action verbs**, attach "는군" or "는군요" to the end instead of just "군" or "군요."

벌써 가시는군요!

"Oh, he's leaving already!"

"가시다" is simply the extra polite form of "가다" (가다 + "(으)시" = "가시다") for referring to people who you want to show extra respect to.

Conclusion

As always, practice what you're studying in order to really learn these concepts well. If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 29: "Let's"

There are a few different ways to say "Let's" in Korean. In English, all we have to do is add "Let's" before a verb – "Let's go" or "Let's eat." Before going over these, I should point out that in general, **none of these are used in formal situations**, or when you're trying to be extra polite.

verb stem + 자

This form is for **casual speech** only. If you're talking with your close friends, this would be the most appropriate form to use.

Just take the verb stem and add "자."

공부하자.

"Let's study."

밥 먹자.

"Let's eat."

밖에서 놀자.

"Let's play outside."

"밖" means "outside."

같이 + "요" form

This form can be used with anyone you're well acquainted with, and is **fine even if they're older than you**. Although it's more polite than the first form, avoid using it with people you're not very close to.

Just add "같이" to the regular "요" form (in present tense). "같이" is an adverb that means "together."

같이 가요.

"Let's go together."

다 같이 밥 먹어요.

"Let's eat all together."

"다 같이" is an adverb that means "all together."

You can also remove the "요" when speaking with close friends in casual conversation.

verb stem + (읍/ㅂ) + 시다

This is the form most often taught in textbooks, but actually **should be avoided**. It can be used to close friends, or to people who are below you in status (such as a boss speaking to his or her employees). It doesn't have a polite feeling to it. Although I'm explaining this form to you, avoid using it. Instead, just be aware that it exists.

Take the verb stem and add "읍" if it ends in a consonant, or "ㅂ" if it ends in a vowel. Then add "시다."

시작합시다.

"Let's begin."

밥 먹읍시다.

"Let's eat."

Conclusion

Practice these lessons to improve. If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 30: "Shall we?"

When you want to ask someone else if they want to do something (or to ask yourself – "Shall I?"), there's a simple form you can use.

verb stem + (을/ㄹ) + 까(요)

Take the verb stem and add "을" if it ends in a consonant, or "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel. Then add "까," and if you're speaking politely, a "요" to the end.

운동할까요?

"Shall we exercise?" Or, "Shall I exercise?"

다시 만날까요?

"Shall we meet again?"

영화 보러 갈까?

"Shall we go to see a movie?"

Since this sentence doesn't have the "요" at the end, it should only be used in casual situations, such as when speaking to a close friend.

뭘 먹을까?

"What shall we eat?"

"뭘" is a shortened form of "무엇을."

Could

This same form has another meaning, "could," as in "Could he be at home?" *This is not the same "could" as when you're saying that someone is capable of doing something.* This is used whenever you're **wondering** about something.

그 사람이 집에 있을까요?

"Could he be at home?"

내일 비가 올까요?

"Could it rain tomorrow?"

정말 그럴까요?

"Could it really be so?"

지금 뭘 하고 있을까요?

"What could he be doing now?"

Conclusion

Remember that this form has two uses: "Shall we?" (or "Shall I?"), and "could." If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 31: "Who"

There are two ways to say "who" in Korean, depending on how it's being used. English has a similar concept – "who" and "whom." "Who" is used when we're referring to a **subject**, and "whom" is used when we're referring to an **object**.

"누가" is similar to "who," and "누구" is similar to "whom."

누가 (Subject)

Use "누가" whenever "who" is the **subject** of a sentence.

누가 했어요?

"Who did it?"

누가 집에 있어요?

"Who is at home?"

누가 밥 먹었어요?

"Who ate?"

누구 (Object)

Use "누구" whenever "who" is the **object** of a sentence ("whom"). This is essential to distinguish, because while English's use of "whom" is slowly fading away, the difference between "누구" and "누가" is still strong in Korean.

If you don't know what an object is, look at the sentence, "I kicked the ball." Here, "I" is the subject, "kicked" is the verb, and "(the) ball" is the object. **The object is what receives the action of the verb.**

누구를 만났어요?

"Who did you meet?"

The above sentence would have a completely different meaning if you used "누가" instead.

누가 만났어요?

"Who met him/her?"

Instead of talking about the person you met, this sentence is asking who did the actual meeting.

누구를 선택했어요?

"Who did you choose?"

"선택하다" means "to select" or "to choose."

In addition to being used whenever "who" ("whom") is the object, "누구" is also used in **every situation** where "who" is not a subject.

누구에게 물어봤어요? (not "누가")

"Who did you ask that to?"

누구한테서 들었어요?

"Who did you hear that from?"

누구랑 이야기했어?

"Who did you talk with?"

This sentence would be only spoken in casual situations.

Conclusion

Use "누가" to mean "who" whenever it's the subject, and use "누구" in all other situations. If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 32: "Wanna"

We went over how to say "want" and "want to" in Episode 3 (using "원하다" for "to want," and "verb stem + 고 싶다" for "want to"); check out that episode, if you already haven't, before moving onto today's new episode.

This lesson will go over how to say a more casual version of "want to" (as in "I want to eat."). In English, we can also say "wanna" (as in "I wanna eat."), and there's a similar way to say this in Korean too.

verb stem + ㄹ/을 + 래(요)

Take the verb stem, then add "을" if it ends in a consonant, or just "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel. Then attach 래, and if you want to be a bit more polite, also attach a "요" to the end.

This form is used in **casual situations**, but by adding a "요" it can be acceptable even when speaking with people who are older than you are. Still, it's best to avoid this form with people whom you aren't close with, in any formal situation, or when trying to be extra polite.

김치를 **먹을래요**.

"I wanna eat kimchi."

집에 **갈래요**.

"I wanna go home."

다이어트를 **시작할래**.

"I wanna start a diet."

"다이어트" means "a diet," and "시작하다" means "to start" or "to begin."

내일 우리 집에 와서 **놀래요?**

"Do you wanna come to our house tomorrow and play?"

Since the verb "놀다" (which means "to play" or "to hang out") already ends in a "ㄹ," it simply becomes "놀래(요)" when used in this form.

This form works with sentences in the negative as well. You can check out Episode 7 to learn more about how to make negative sentences.

안 할래.

"I don't wanna do it."

This sentence would only be used in a casual situation with a close friend.

같이 여행 가지 않을래?

"Don't you wanna go on a trip together?"

"여행(을) 가다" means "to go on a trip."

Advanced Notes

The grammar form is used to express something that the speaker wants to do, or *intends* to do. However, the "intent" is not as strong as when using the form "verb stem +려고 해요." To keep things simple, just consider this 래(요) form as meaning "wanna" and you'll be alright.

In addition, this form can only be used in the 1st and 2nd person, and *not in the 3rd person* (meaning that it cannot be used to talk about someone besides *the speaker* and *the listener*); like all descriptions of feeling or emotion in Korean, this form can only be used for referring to yourself or the person who you're talking to.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 33: "When"

The Korean word for "when" is "언제," and you can use it several ways. This is different than the "when" that you'd use if you were saying "When I was young," or "When I go to school;" check out Episode 14 to learn about that ("verb stem + 을/ㄹ 때").

You can use "언제" when asking questions, such as in the example, "When will you go home?"

언제

언제예요?

"When is it?"

언제 집에 갈 거예요?

"When will you go home?"

언제 숙제를 해요?

"When will you do your homework?"

You can use it at the beginning of a sentence, as in the above two examples, or directly before a verb (as an **adverb**). The meaning will be the same.

집에 언제 갈 거예요?

"When will you go home?"

숙제를 언제 해요?

"When will you do your homework?"

Let's look at a few more example sentences.

그 영화를 언제 볼 거예요?

"When will you see that movie?"

언제 철수를 만났어요?

"When did you meet Cheolsoo?"

언제 청수를 했어요?

"When did you do cleaning?"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 34: "Can" and "Can't"

This lesson will go over how to say "can" and "can't" in Korean. Specifically, this is for talking about things that a person is **capable of** doing, or **not capable of** doing.

Can: verb stem + 을/ㄹ 수 있다

Can't: verb stem + 을/ㄹ 수 없다

Take the verb stem and add "을" if it ends in a consonant, or "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel. Then add 수. Finally, attach the verb "있다" ("to exist") if you want to say "can." Attach the verb "없다" ("to not exist") if you want to say "can't."

할 수 있어요.

"I can do it."

할 수 없어요.

"I can't do it."

먹을 수 있어요.

"I can eat it."

먹을 수 없어요.

"I can't eat it."

It's pretty straightforward. Let's look at some real example sentences.

내일 식당에 갈 수 있어요?

"Can you go to the restaurant tomorrow?"

"식당" means "restaurant."

이해할 수 없으면 물어보세요.

"Ask me if you can't understand."

"이해하다" means "to understand," and "물어보다" means "to ask."

철수는 할 수 있다고 말했어요.

"Cheolsoo said that he can do it."

Can't: verb stem + 지 못하다

Here's one more form to learn – a second way to say "can't." It's a bit shorter and simpler.

Take the verb stem and add "지," then add the verb "못하다." If the verb that you're working with is just the verb "하다" then all you have to do is change it to "못하다" and you're done.

못해요.

"I can't do it."

저는 영어를 못해요.

"I can't speak English." (Literally this means "I can't do English")

저는 우유를 마시지 못합니다.

"I can't drink milk."

Additional Notes

There is one more way to say "can't" in Korean, and it's even simpler than the above two methods. However, because the rules to apply it are not simple, I'm putting it into a separate section. Feel free to read this section over if you're interested, but learn the above forms first.

못 + Pure-Korean verb

Isn't that simple? Just add "못" before a Pure-Korean verb, and you're done. But what is a Pure-Korean verb? Check out the PDF lesson file for Episode 7, in which I go over this in more detail. If you already know what a Pure-Korean verb is, then feel free to use this form.

못 가요.

"I can't go."

못 했어요.

"I couldn't do it."

오늘 못 온다고 했어요.

"He said that he can't come today."

Conclusion

Feel free to skip the above purple section if this is your first time learning how to say "can" and "can't," as it contains more intermediate level information.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 35: "Where"

Fortunately, there's only one word you have to learn for "where," but you might use it a bit differently depending on what particles are attached to it.

어디

The word for "where" is just "어디," and it's used whenever you're asking a question about "where" something is.

어디요?

"Where?"

Adding the "요" at the end makes this sentence polite, but you can remove it when speaking to a close friend.

어디에 가요?

"Where are you going?"

This sentence literally means, "Where **to** are you going?" Notice that we added the particle "에" after "어디." However, this particle is actually optional; even if you don't add "에," it's still understood to mean the same thing. The following sentence would therefore mean the same thing:

어디 가요?

"Where are you going?"

철수가 어디 있어요?

"Where is Cheolsoo?"

Remember that although we're not using the particle "에" here, the sentence is understood to mean the same thing.

어디에서 먹을까요?

"Where should we eat?"

This literally means, "Where should we eat **at**?" If you're not familiar with the particle "에서," check out [Learn Korean Ep. 23: "에" and "에서"](#). However, there's another shortcut here too.

Remember how the particle “에” is optional when used after “어디?” Well, it’s also optional here, but **only the “에” part**. Therefore, the following sentence would mean the same thing:

어디서 먹을까요?

“Where should we eat?”

어디에서 샀어요?

“Where did you buy that?”

Like before, this literally means, “Where did you buy that **at**?”

한국말을 어디서 공부했어요?

“Where did you study Korean?”

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 36: "I'll do it for you"

In English, when we're doing something for someone else as a favor, we might say "I'll do it for you." Korean has a special grammatical form which basically means this – "I'll do this for you as a favor."

verb stem + 을/ㄹ + 게(요)

Take the verb stem and attach "을" if it ends in a consonant, or just a "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel. Then attach "게," and add "요" if you're being polite.

할게요.

"I'll do it."

As I said before, this form means that you're doing something as a favor for someone else. However, it doesn't have to be a big favor (it can be something very small), and it doesn't have to translate directly as "I'll do it for you" either.

숙제를 도와줄게요.

"I'll help you with your homework."

"도와주다" means "to help" or "to assist."

내가 밥 살게.

"I'll treat."

This literally means "I'll buy you food." Feel free to say this to all of your close Korean friends, and they'll love you. Just remember that you do actually have to pay if you use this phrase.

But what if you want to say "I'll do it for you" in a more polite way?

verb stem + 어/아/etc 드릴게(요)

First conjugate the verb like you would for the "요" form. If you're not sure how to do this, check out [Learn Korean Ep. 2: Conjugating the ~요 form](#). Then attach "드릴게요," which

comes from the verb “드리다.” “드리다” means “to give,” and is a **polite verb** that shows respect to the person that you’re giving something to (“주다” is the regular verb for “to give”). You should use this form to people who are older than you, such as teachers or parents.

제가 **해 드릴게요.**

“I’ll do it for you.”

포장해 드릴게요.

“I’ll wrap it up for you.”

If you order something “to go” at a Korean restaurant, you’ll likely hear this from the employee.

“포장하다” means “to wrap up.”

갖다 드릴게요.

“I’ll take it to you.”

This sentence is a bit different than the form above, but simply uses “드리다” as a more polite replacement for the word “주다,” “to give.”

“갖다” means “to have” or “to hold,” and “갖다 드리다” means “to take (to someone).” The less formal version would simply be “갖다 주다.”

verb stem + 어/아/etc 주다

This isn’t necessarily an advanced concept, but I’ve written it in purple since it doesn’t appear in the video version of this lesson. This form, “verb stem + 어/아/etc 주다,” has the same meaning as the form above, “verb stem + 어/아/etc 드리다” – “드리다” is simply a more polite form of the verb “주다” for **use when you are the giver** (not for describing someone else giving something to someone).

With that said, feel free to use the form “verb stem + 어/아/etc 주다” with any friends, or in any informal situation. Do not use it to older people, or in formal situations, as it is not especially polite, but it is also not especially rude either, since you can use this with a “요.” Its politeness is equivalent to the first form we learned, “verb stem + 을/ㄹ + 게(요).” Here are just a couple of examples.

내가 **해 줄게.**

“I’ll do it for you.”

밥 사 줄게.

"I'll treat."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 37: "F.Y.I."

In English, if you want to say something that you believe the listener doesn't already know, you can say something like "F.Y.I." or "For your information," or even "Just so you know." Korean has a simple way to express all of the above.

Even if you don't end up using this form yourself, you're going to hear it used by others often.

verb stem + 거든(요)

Take the verb stem and attach "거든," then add a "요" when you're not talking with a close friend. However, you should be careful when using this form at all. It can come off as rude if not used in the right situations and without the right attitude. But with close friends, go ahead and use it as you would in English.

In addition, the intonation you say this with will be very important. **Using a rising intonation can come across as rude or condescending**, but **using a falling intonation can be acceptable in most situations** where you're simply *informing* someone of something you believe they might not already know. *To hear intonation for the following sentences, watch the video that accompanies this lesson.*

아니거든.

"Uh, no it's not."

You could also translate this as "For your information, it isn't," but really, **the form is more of just the *feeling* of "F.Y.I."** than it is the actual literal translation.

제가 미국 사람이거든요.

"Just so you know, I'm an American."

저는 생선을 싫어하거든요.

"For your information, I hate fish."

"생선" means "(dead) fish." If it's still alive and swimming, you would say "물고기."

우리 사귀고 **있거든요.**

"For your information, we're dating."

"사귀다" means "to date (as a couple)."

내일부터 일하게 **됐거든요.**

"Just so you know, I'm going to be working from tomorrow."

됐거든!

"No thanks!"

This is a rude way to reject someone. If you try to talk to a pretty girl and get this, well, I'm sorry. But at least you understood it, and that's the most important thing... right?

Conclusion

Again, be careful when using this form, as it can sound rude if used with the wrong intonation or in the wrong situation. But as long as you pay attention to what you're actually saying before using it, there's nothing to worry about.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 38: "What"

There are a few different versions of the word "what" in Korean. Let's take a look at each of them.

무엇 (formal) / 뭐 (informal)

The two most common ways to say "what" are "무엇," if you're speaking formally, or "뭐," if you're speaking informally.

When used as a subject, you'd simply add the Subject Marker, and when used as an object, the Object Marker.

Subject:

무엇이 / 뭐가

Object:

무엇을 / 뭐

무엇을 먹었습니까?

"What did you eat?" (Formal)

뭐 먹었어?

"What did you eat?" (Informal)

무엇이 문제입니까?

"What's the problem?" (Formal)

뭐가 문제예요?

"What's the problem" (Informal)

뭐해요?

"What are you doing?"

머 and 모

Here are two additional ways to say "what." Both of these are slang.

"머" is a common slang variation. When using this one, it's most common to leave off the Object Marker, but **not** leave off the Subject Marker.

머해?

"What are you doing?"

머가 그렇게 웃겨?

"What's so funny?"

"모" is a variation of "머," and means the same thing, but is a dialect variation from the city of 부산.

모하노?

"What are you doing?"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 39: "Don't"

You have several options if you want to say "don't" in Korean.

verb stem + 지 말다

Take the verb stem, then add "지," and the verb "말다." This is the basic grammar format for telling someone "don't," but you can't leave it alone as it is. Remember that you'll have to conjugate the verb "말다" in order to use it as a command.

By conjugating "말다," we get a few different varieties.

Polite:

verb stem + 지 마세요

"Please:"

verb stem + 지 말아주세요

Casual:

verb stem + 지 마(요)

The polite way of saying "don't" is also the **most common**. The second way means "please don't." The third one, "~지 마요" or just "~지 마," can only be used in casual situations.

지금 시작하지 마세요.

"Don't start now."

그렇게 빨리 걸어가지 말아주세요.

"Please don't walk so fast."

"걸어가다" means "to walk (somewhere)."

하지 마!

"Don't!"

쳐다보지마요.

"Don't stare (at me)."

"쳐다보다" means "to stare."

제가 말하고 있는 동안에 **방해하지 마세요.**

"Don't interrupt me while I'm talking."

"방해하다" means "to interrupt." Check out Episode 26 to learn about how to use "while."

However, I should note that in general, when you're speaking in any formal situation where you want to be extra polite, you probably wouldn't say "don't" at all; just like in English, "don't" can come across as rude in some cases.

Advanced Notes

So what if you want to say "don't" in a more polite situation without coming across as rude? Here's just one way:

verb stem + (으)시면 안 됩니다.

Take the verb stem and attach "시면" if it ends in a vowel, or "으시면" if it ends in a consonant – the "시" is an honorific particle – then add "안 됩니다," which means "it's not okay." This together means "it's not okay if you~," and can sometimes be used in more polite situations.

죄송하지만, 사진을 **찍으시면 안 됩니다.**

"I'm sorry but, you can't take photographs."

Conclusion

Remember to be careful when saying "don't," if you're in any kind of formal situation, or if you're required to be extra polite.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 40: "Why" and "How"

왜 = "why"

어떻게 = "how"

Both "왜" and "어떻게" are adverbs, so they're used **before** a verb. Let's first take a look at how to use "왜."

왜요?

"Why?"

Remember that if you were to leave the "요" off at the end, this would become a casual sentence.

왜 안 했어요?

"Why didn't you do it?"

왜 도망가요?

"Why are you running away?"

"도망가다" means "to run away."

왜 그렇게 생각하세요?

"Why do you think that?"

"그렇게" literally means "in that way," so it can translate simply as just "that."

Now let's look at how to use "어떻게."

어떻게요?

"How?"

어떻게 했어요?

"How did you do it?"

집에서 학교까지 **어떻게** 갈 수 있어요?

"How can I go from my house to the school?"

어떻게 생각하세요?

"What do you think?"

This sentence literally means "**how** do you think?" But "어떻게" is used whenever you're asking someone's opinion on something. This is simply the standard way of doing it. Here, you wouldn't use "무엇" for "what," or the sentence would sound awkward to a Korean. You can just remember this as a special case.

한국말을 **어떻게** 그렇게 잘 하세요?

"How do you speak Korean so well?"

Remember that "그렇게" means "in that way." However, it can also translate as "so," such as in "so good" or "so well" (as in the above example sentence).

Advanced Notes

Although "왜" means "why," if you watch the video for this episode again you might notice that even though Billy says "왜" the translated text is "what?"

First of all, "왜" only has one meaning – "why."

However, depending on the context, simply saying "왜(요)" on its own can translate to English as "what" in order to create a more natural sounding translation.

"왜" will only be translated to "what" when **asking the reason why someone is doing something**. In the video, Keykat is poking Billy, so he asks "why (are you poking me)?" In natural English, this would translate simply as "what (do you want)?"

Another similar situation is **when someone is staring at you** without speaking. In English we might ask "what (are you looking at)?" But in Korean, they will ask "why (are you looking at me)?" and simply use "왜(요)?"

Conclusion

There shouldn't be anything too tricky in this lesson. "왜" means "why" and "어떻게" means "how."

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 41: "Almost"

There are two ways of saying "almost" in Korean, and which one you'll use will depend on what it is that you want to say.

(On purpose) 거의 (By mistake) verb stem + ㄹ/을 뻔하다

To say "almost" when something was **not by mistake**, use "거의" as an adverb. An example would be when saying "to almost be finished" or "to almost be ready" or "to almost **be anything**."

저는 **거의** 한국 사람입니다.

"I am almost a Korean."

If you loved Korea more than anywhere, ate only Korean food, and spoke only in Korean, but weren't a Korean by blood, I suppose you could say this sentence.

거의 같아요.

"It is almost the same."

숙제를 **거의** 다 했어요.

"I almost finished all of my homework."

"다" is an adverb which means "all." Therefore, "거의 다" means "almost all" or "almost completely."

If you want to say that something almost happened, or you almost did something **by mistake or accidentally**, there's a different form you'll use.

Take the verb stem and add "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel, or "을" if it ends in a consonant. Then attach the verb "뻔하다," which means "to almost." Finally, conjugate it.

죽을 뻔했어요.

"I almost died."

학교에 못 갈 뻔했어요.

"I almost couldn't go to school."

버스를 놓칠 뻔했어요.

"I almost missed the bus."

"놓치다" means "to miss (an opportunity, etc)."

오늘 차에 치일 뻔했어요.

"I almost got hit by a car today."

"차에 치이다" means "to be hit by a car."

Conclusion

For things that are "almost" *on purpose*, use "거의," and for things that are "almost" *by accident*, use "verb stem + 르/을 뻔하다."

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 42: “테니까” & “텐데”

Let's learn two new forms that both share a common part – “테.”

v.s. + ㄹ/을 테니까(요)

This means “because” (or “so/therefore”), and is used when you're **talking about the future** (similarly to how ~겠다 or ~ㄹ/을 것이다 is used). It looks similar to the regular “~니까” form, which I cover in another lesson (Episode 22: “Because”).

Take a verb stem and add “ㄹ” if it ends in a vowel, or “을” if it ends in a consonant. Then attach “테니까” if it's in the **middle of a sentence**. If you're using this at the **end of a sentence** then you can attach “테니까,” or “테니까요” when speaking politely.

오늘 비 올 테니까 우산을 가지고 가세요.

“It will rain today, so bring an umbrella.”

“우산” means “umbrella,” and “가지고 가다” means “to take (and go).”

지금 나가도 너무 늦었을 테니까요.

“Because even if you leave now, you're already too late.”

“늦다” means “to be late,” and is often used in the past tense, such as this example.

v.s. + ㄹ/을 텐데(요)

This means “but” (or “though”), and is also used when you're **talking about the future**.

Take a verb stem and add “ㄹ” if it ends in a vowel, or “을” if it ends in a consonant. This form is used to **end a sentence** or statement, so it won't appear in the middle of a single sentence. You can use “텐데,” or “텐데요” when speaking politely.

아닐 텐데.

“But it won't be.”

내가 그 시간에는 집에 없을 **텐데요**.

"But I won't be home at that time."

Advanced Notes

You can actually also use **텐데** in the **middle** of a sentence (this is because **텐데** is actually composed of + **이다** + the **데** form), but it's typically used at the end of a sentence because of its usage/meaning.

The idea of using it is this: your sentence sounds incomplete when using **텐데** (just as it would when using the **데** form), as if there's something that would go after it. This is why it's most often used at the end.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 43: Possessive Marker

You've probably seen and used the Possessive Marker before many times, but let's go over it in a bit more detail.

“의”

The Possessive Marker acts kind of like an “apostrophe s” in English (‘s), in that it shows that someone or something **belongs** to someone or something else.

Although it's written “의,” whenever it's used as the Possessive Marker, it's pronounced “에.” However, if you really want to, or if you forget, you can still pronounce it “의,” it's just less common.

Let's look at some examples:

저의 자동차

“my car”

김 선생님의 직업

“Mr. Kim's job”

“직업” means “job” or “occupation.”

“저의” (“my” – polite) can also be, and is more often, shortened to “제.”

“나의” (“my” – for casual situations when speaking to people you know who are the same age as you or younger), can also be shortened to “내.”

“너의,” (“your” – for casual situations when speaking to people you know who are the same age as you or younger), be shortened to “네.” However, because “네” sounds so similar to “내,” more often you'll hear “네” *pronounced* as “니” instead. In writing, it will still be written “네.”

The Possessive Marker can also be used to connect two nouns, even though it might not directly mean that one necessarily **owns** the other one. In this way, it can translate to **"of."**

사랑의 힘
"the power of love"

But if this seems a bit confusing, feel free to just translate it as an **"apostrophe s"** like before, and you'll still get a translation that at least makes sense.

사랑의 힘
"love's power"

Here are some more examples:

동생의 숙제를 도와줬어요.
"I helped my younger sibling do their homework."

할머니의 가방을 들어 드렸어요.
"I carried the old lady's bag."
"들어 드리다" means "to carry (for someone)."

Advanced Note

You might sometimes see combination words in Korean – words built from two words smashed together into one. In these, you'll often find a lone "ㅅ" directly between them. There are tons of words like this, but here are just a couple of examples:

"윗방" = "위" and "방"
"아랫방" = "아래" and "방"

Whenever you see a "ㅅ" between two words, such as in the two cases above, know that the "ㅅ" is actually a **contraction** of "의."

"윗방" → "위의 방"

“아랫방” → “아래의 방”

The “ㅅ” is there because originally there was a “의” separating the two nouns. You’ll see words like these quite often in Korean.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 44: "How to"

Let's learn how to say "how to," such as in the sentences "I know how to use chopsticks" or "I know how to sing." There are several ways to say "how to;" let's talk about the most common two ways.

v.s. + ㄹ/을 줄 알다/모르다

Let's look at the first way of saying "how to." Take the verb stem and add "ㄹ" if it ends in a vowel, or "을" if it ends in a consonant. Then attach "줄." Finally, conjugate the verb "알다" if you know, or "모르다" if you don't know.

수영할 줄 알아요.

"I know how to swim."

자전거를 탈 줄 몰라요.

"I don't know how to ride a bicycle."

"자전거(를) 타다" means "to ride a bicycle."

젓가락을 쓸 줄 아세요?

"Do you know how to use chopsticks?"

"젓가락" means "chopsticks."

어떻게 v.s. + 는지 알다/모르다

Let's look at the second way of saying "how to." Take the adverb "어떻게" ("how"). Then take the verb stem and attach "는지." Finally, conjugate the verb "알다" if you know, or "모르다" if you don't know.

어떻게 가는지 알아요.

"I know how to go there."

어떻게 해야 하는지 몰라요.

"I don't know what I need to do."

이걸 어떻게 쓰는지 아세요?

"Do you know how to use this?"

"이걸" is an abbreviation of "이것을."

Advanced Notes

The following information is recommended for intermediate level learners or higher.

v.s. + ㄹ/을 즐 알다 [Part 2]

This form has one additional use. Literally, it means the same thing as we learned, but you might see it used in the following way:

김치를 드실 줄 아세요?

Literally: "Do you know how to eat kimchi?"

Meaning: "Do you like kimchi?"

"드시다" is the honorific form of the verb "먹다" ("to eat").

v.s. + 는 방법(을) 알다/모르다

"방법" means "way" or "method," so this literally means "do you know the way to~" or "do you know the method of~." Its meaning is similar to the two we learned above, but its usage is a bit more formal.

이 컴퓨터를 고치는 방법을 아세요?

Literal: "Do you know the way to fix this computer?"

Meaning: "Do you know how to fix this computer?"

A shortening of "방법" is just "법," though its usage is less common.

젓가락을 쓰는 법

"the way to use chopsticks"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 45: Make & Let

Let's learn how to say "make" and "let" in Korean. For example, how to say "I let him eat" or "I made him eat."

v.s + 게 하다

This form can mean either "to make" or "to let." Which one it is will be clear from the context of the sentence.

Take the verb stem and add "게," then conjugate the verb "하다."

강아지가 초콜릿을 **먹게** 하지 마.

"Don't let the puppy eat chocolate."

Although you could translate this as "don't make the dog eat chocolate," in this context it probably makes more sense for it to be "let."

내가 또 말하게 **하지** 마.

"Don't make me say it again."

v.s + 게 해주다

This form is made in the same way as the one above, but with the verb "주다" attached to the end. You can learn about how to use the verb "해주다" ("**to do as a favor**") in another one of my lessons (Episode 36: "I'll do it for you").

저 좀 자게 **해주세요**.

"Please let me sleep."

"좀" is an abbreviation of "조금."

티비를 볼 수 있게 **해주세요**.

Literal: "Please let me be able to watch TV."

Meaning: "Please let me watch TV."

v.s + 게 만들다

This form means only "to make," and it even uses the verb "만들다" ("to make").

Take the verb stem and add "게," then conjugate the verb "만들다."

철수를 화나게 만들었어.

"I made Cheolsoo get angry."

"화나다" means "to get angry."

친구들이 싸우게 만들었어.

"I made my friends fight."

"싸우다" means "to fight."

Remember that all of these verbs are **action verbs**, and not adjectives or descriptive verbs.

Advanced Notes

I'd recommend only reading these advanced notes if you are at an intermediate level or higher.

시키다

"시키다" is a verb which means "to make" or "to let" in and of itself. It can be used as a replacement for the verb "하다" ("to do").

일을 시키다

"to make someone work"

청소를 시키다

"to make someone do cleaning"

For all other situations other than replacing the verb "하다," use one of the forms learned above.

In addition, "피자(를) 시키다" means "to order a pizza."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 46: "In order to"

Let's learn how to say "in order to." A couple of examples would be "in order to buy a house, I need money" or "I went to school in order to study." There are two ways to convey this in Korean, depending on what the verb that follows this form is.

v.s + 기 위해(서)

Take the verb stem and add 기, then add 위해. The 서 afterwards is optional, if you're using an **action verb** after it. Otherwise, just use 위해.

You can use this form whenever you'd like to mean "in order to."

저는 공부하기 **위해서** 학교에 갔어요.

"I went to school in order to study."

집을 사기 **위해** 돈이 필요해요.

"I need money to buy a house."

필요하다 means "to be necessary" and is a *descriptive verb*; therefore use the *Subject Marker* (이/가) after the noun you need, and not the *Object Marker* (을/를).

v.s + (으)러

Take the verb stem and add 으러 if it ends in a consonant, or 러 if it ends in a vowel.

This form also means "in order to" but can **only** be used with verbs that convey *motion* (such as 가다 and 오다, among others).

빵을 사**러** 가게에 갔어요.

"I went to the store to buy bread."

한국말을 공부하**러** 왔어요.

"I came to study Korean."

Advanced Notes

I'd recommend only reading these advanced notes if you are at an intermediate level or higher.

v.s. + 도록

Take the verb stem and add 도록.

This is one more way to say "in order to," but also has a bit of a different translation. It could also translate as "so that," such as "so that I can study" or "so that he can be happy." It's used most often in more formal, or written Korean, including speeches.

제가 공부할 수 있도록...

"...so that I can study"

그가 행복할 수 있도록...

"...so that he can be happy"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 47: "I think"

Let's go over two ways to express *thinking* in Korean.

Plain Form + 고 생각하다

Take the Plain Form of a verb (watch "Learn Korean Ep. 17" for a review of this) and attach 고, then the verb 생각하다, which means "to think."

This form is a literal translation of "think," but can be used in any situation.

It is not the most casual way of expressing thoughts, but will grammatically always be correct. Therefore it is the most versatile.

저는 한국말이 어렵다고 생각해요.

"I think that Korean is difficult."

선생님이 좋은 사람이라고 생각해요.

"I think that the teacher is a good person."

철수가 미국에 갔다고 생각해요.

"I think that Cheolsoo went to America."

Verb stem + 은/ㄴ 것 같다

Take the verb stem and conjugate it as you would conjugate an adjective – this will vary depending on some types of descriptive verbs. For most verbs, this is the verb stem with 은 added if it ends in a consonant, or ㄴ added if it ends in a vowel.

This second way is more common for conversation and sounds a bit more natural. However, this one does not literally translate as “think” – instead it translates to “it seems” or “it is like.” But for speaking purposes, this is the most common and most useful way of expressing an opinion.

제 친구가 이미 **나간 거 같아요.**

“I think my friend already left.”

거 is a shortened form of 것, and 나가다 means “to leave.”

오늘도 많이 **추운 거 같아요.**

“I think today is really cold too.”

그분이 한국 **사람인 것 같았어요.**

“I thought he’s Korean.”

Advanced Notes

I'd recommend only reading these advanced notes if you are at an intermediate level or higher.

The second method, v.s. + 은/ㄴ 것 같다, can also be used with future tense verbs.

할 것 같아요.

"I think I will do it."

더울 거 같아.

"I think it will be hot."

Verb stem + 은/ㄴ/을/ㄹ 줄 알다

Take the verb stem and conjugate it to any tense you'd like (for present tense, add 은 or ㄴ to the verb stem, and for future tense, 을 or ㄹ). Then attach 줄, and finally conjugate the verb 알다 ("to know").

This form is common in conversation, but is recommended for intermediate speakers of Korean as it is more difficult to construct. This also means "I think," though literally it actually translates as "I *know* that." As such, it can be used to mean either "think that" or "know that," which one it is will depend entirely on context, but in context will not be confusing.

한국 사람인 줄 알았어요!

"I thought you were Korean!"

내일 올 줄 알았는데...

"I thought he'd come tomorrow..."

그렇게 할 줄 알았어!

"I knew you'd do that!"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 48: Something, Somewhere, and Someone

Let's go over how to say "something," "somewhere," and "someone." There are actually two ways to say each of these, but you can get away with using just one.

무엇인가/뭔가, 어딘가, 누군가

For "something," you can use 무엇인가 (formal) or 뭔가 (casual). However, 뭔가 is used a lot more commonly, so I'd recommend using this instead, but be aware of 무엇인가 as well.

뭔가 먹었어요?

"Did you eat something?"

For "somewhere," you can use 어딘가.

어딘가에 있겠죠?

"It must be somewhere, right?"

And finally, for "someone," you can use 누군가.

누군가 했어요.

"Someone did it."

And that's all! If you're learning Korean for the first time, you can stop reading this lesson here. Beyond here lies intermediate lesson material, and a second way to say "something," "somewhere," and "someone."

뭐, 어디, 누구/누가

These are the second set of words. They should look familiar, as they're actually the same words used for "what," "where," and "who."

For "something," you can use 뭐.

But before going further, we need to talk about *emphasis*. The emphasis on the sentence will be different when saying 뭐 to mean "what" and when saying 뭐 to mean "something." The same applies to "where" and "who" as well.

뭐 했어요?

"**What** did you do?"

Here, we are emphasizing 뭐. The resulting 뭐 means "what."

Whenever your emphasis is on the word 뭐, 어디, or 누구/누가, their meanings will remain "what," "where," and "who."

Changing the emphasis away from 뭐, and putting it onto the verb, will change it into "something."

뭐 했어요?

"Did you do **something**?"

Koreans hearing these two sentences would easily notice the difference between the emphases, and understand the sentences differently.

For "somewhere," you can use 어디.

어디 갔어요?

"Did he go **somewhere**?"

어디 갔어요?

"Where did he go?"

For "someone," you can use 누구 or 누가 (누가 when it is used as a *subject*, or 누구 when it is *not the subject*).

누가 했어요?

"Did **someone** do it?"

누구 만났어요?

"Did you meet **someone**?"

누가 했어요?

"**Who** did it?"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 49: Intention Words

Let's cover a few important adverbs that you can use in your Korean sentences.

In vain 괜히

Although "in vain" is not a common adverb in casual English, it is perfectly normal in Korean.

Doing something 괜히 means that you've wasted your time doing it, or you're expressing it was pointless to do it to begin with.

괜히 샀네요!

"You bought it in vain!"

This could also translate as "you wasted your money on that" or "you didn't need to buy that."

어제 괜히 숙제를 했어요.

"I did my homework in vain yesterday."

Perhaps you could say this if you arrived at school after doing homework all night, only to find out the assignment was cancelled.

On purpose 일부러

Another way to translate this adverb is "intentionally."

일부러 그랬지?

"You did that on purpose, right?"

동생이 일부러 설거지를 안 했어요.

"My younger sibling didn't do the dishes on purpose."

설거지(를) 하다 means "to do the dishes."

On accident 실수로

You could also translate this adverb as "accidentally" or "by accident."

제가 실수로 버렸어요.

"I threw it away on accident."

실수로 그렇게 말했어요.

"I said that by accident."

Advanced Notes

I'd recommend only reading these advanced notes if you are at an intermediate level or higher.

의도적으로

This word comes from 의도 ("intention") and 의도적 ("intentional").

의도적으로 translates as "intentionally" and can be used in all of the same situations as 일부러, but has a more formal feel to it. It would be most appropriate for writing, or for formal speaking such as a speech.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 50: Or

The word "or" can be expressed in a few ways, depending on how you're using it. Let's look at the most common ways.

아니면

Saying "or" using this is very simple. You can place it between two **nouns**, or between two **sentences**, just like in English.

Using **아니면** means that you are offering more than one **choice** to the listener. It's as if you're saying, "You can choose this, or you can choose that."

저 **아니면** 철수
"me or Chul-soo"

갈 거예요? **아니면** 안 갈 거예요?
"Are you going to go or not?"

Notice how **아니면** comes after a complete sentence in the above example. In English, we'd connect the two sentences together (or sometimes with a comma between them), but in Korean it's more common to connect two options in **separate sentences** using **아니면**.

같이 갈래요? **아니면** 집에 있을래요?
"Do you want to go together, or stay at home?"

아들이예요? **아니면** 딸이에요?
"Is it a boy, or a girl?"

You could use the above example when asking someone the gender of their new child.

(이)나

To use this one, take a noun and add **나** if it ends in a **vowel**, or **이나** if it ends in a **consonant**.

But this way is *different* than **아니면**.

First, this way can only be used between **nouns**.

Second, using (이)나 is not for presenting choices. Instead, it is used when saying "or something" or "whether or." Although it translates as "or," it is used whenever the person you are talking to is not required to make a choice. Let's see some examples, then I'll explain further.

저나 철수

"me or Chul-soo"

빵이나 먹을 거예요.

"I'll eat bread or something."

과일이나 야채를 먹고 싶어요.

"I want to eat fruits or vegetables."

Notice in the above sentence, it's not presenting two options that someone needs to choose from. In fact, the speaker would be okay eating either fruits or vegetables, or even both. This is how (이)나 is different than **아니면**.

과일 아니면 야채를 먹고 싶어요.

"I want to eat fruits or vegetables."

In the above sentence, the speaker would not want to have both. The speaker is expressing that he or she is choosing between only one of the options. If the speaker were to eat fruits, then he or she would not want to have vegetables, and vice versa.

옷이나 사세요.

"Buy some clothes or something."

햄이나 김치를 넣을까?

"Should we put on ham or kimchi or something?"

Advanced Notes

v.s. + 거나

Although (이)나 is exclusively used for connecting *nouns*, 거나 can be used for *verbs*.

Take the verb stem and add 거나. Its usage is the same as (이)나.

공부를 하거나 놀아요.

"Study or play."

학교에 가거나 도서관에 가요.

"I'm going to school or the library."

혹은

혹은 means the same thing as 아니면, but is Sino Korean (it comes from Chinese) and is a bit more formal than 아니면; as such, it is less common than 아니면. However, both are fine to use.

진실 혹은 거짓

"lies or truth"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 51: Like

I'm not referring to the verb 좋아하다, "to like," but am talking about "to be similar to."
There are several ways to express "like" depending on how you're using it.

와/과 같다

Take a noun and add 와 or 과 (와 after a **vowel** and 과 after a **consonant**). Then add the verb 같다, which means "to be like."

내 생각도 너와 같아.

"I even think like you."

Remember that using 너 is rude, and is only acceptable when talking to someone your same age or younger, and only to people with whom you have a close relationship, and not to people who are older than you or you are not well acquainted with.

와/과 똑같다

You can also add 똑 to the beginning of 같다 to mean "just like" or "exactly like."

철수의 옷이 내 옷과 똑같아.

"Chul-soo's clothes are just like mine."

와/과 비슷하다

You can also use the verb 비슷하다 instead of 같다, which means "to be similar to."

동생과 나는 키가 비슷해요.

"My height is similar to my younger sibling."

키 means "height."

처럼

But what if you don't want to just say that something **is** like something else? What if you want to say that something does something like something else, or **is** a certain way like something?

Take a noun and add 처럼. 처럼 will replace whatever other marker you may have had there before, such as the Topic Marker, Subject Marker, or Object Marker. 처럼 means "like" or "as," but can be followed by any verb (descriptive or action verb) you'd like. It can be used in a variety of different ways.

나는 너**처럼** 똑똑하지 않아.

"I'm not as smart as you."

엄마**처럼** 되고 싶어.

"I want to be like my mom."

Advanced Notes

Note that **(이)랑** can be used in place of 와/과. 이랑 after a consonant and 랑 after a vowel. It has the same meaning as using 와/과, but is used for more casual situations – not for speaking politely or formally.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 52: "Have you ever?"

Let's go over how to say "have ever," such as "Have you ever gone to Korea before?"

~아/어/etc 본 적(이) 있다

~아/어/etc 본 적(이) 없다

Take the verb and conjugate it as though you were conjugating the **요** form. If you don't know how to conjugate the **요** form, check out [Learn Korean Ep. 2](#) to learn how.

Instead of adding the **요** at the end, add **본**. Then add **적**, which means "a time" or "an experience." Adding the Subject Marker (**이**) afterward is optional. Then add the verb **있다** if you **have**, and **없다** if you **have not** done it before.

It seems a bit long, but with a little bit of practice will feel like second nature.

한국에 가본 적이 있어요?

"Have you ever been to Korea before?"

제 친구를 만나본 적이 없어요?

"Have you never met my friend before?"

이 영화를 본적이 있어요?

"Have you ever seen this movie before?"

Note that in the above sentence, although you normally will conjugate the verb and add **본**, if the verb itself is **보다** ("to see") it doesn't need to be conjugated – it can be left alone in the past tense as **본**.

본 적이 없어요.

"I've never seen it before."

Advanced Notes

The verb 보다 (here used as 본) is *optional*. The verb, used next to a conjugated verb, adds the meaning of “to try (doing).” Knowing this, let’s take a look at a sentence we learned previously.

한국에 가본 적이 있어요?

“Have you ever tried going to Korea before?”

In this way, adding 보다 means “to do something and see how it goes” – or as we might say, “to try doing something.”

If you want to express that you’ve simply done something, and not that you’ve necessarily tried it, it’s also easy to do. Speaking in this way is very straightforward, so be sure it’s what you want to do before using it. First conjugate the verb in the past tense; this will usually be using ㄴ/은. Then add 적(이) 있다 or 적(이) 없다 as before.

김치를 먹은 적이 없어요.

“I never ate kimchi before.”

Compare this to what we learned in this lesson.

김치를 먹어본 적이 없어요.

“I’ve never tried kimchi before.”

For conversation, the second (using ~아/어/etc 본) is much preferred. The first might be preferred to emphasize that you’ve really never even touched kimchi before, and you want to stress that to the listener.

If you want a quick answer for which is better, definitely stick to using ~아/어/etc 본 when expressing something you’ve done or not done before.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 53: Even

There are several ways to express "even" in Korean depending on what it is you are trying to say. Let's cover the basics.

noun + 도

Take a noun and add 도.

You might have learned this one already as meaning "too" or "also." Literally, it means "even."

저도

"Me too" or "Even me"

저도 할 수 있어요.

"I can do it too" or "Even I can do it."

사과도 맛있어요.

"Apples are delicious too," or "Even apples are delicious."

~아/어/etc + 도

Take a verb and conjugate it as though you were conjugating the 요 form. If you don't know how to do this, check out [Learn Korean Ep. 2](#) to learn how. Instead of adding 요, add 도.

This means "even if (you do something)." You can use any verb you'd like with it.

학교에 안 가도 숙제는 해야 돼요.

"Even if you don't go to school, you have to do homework."

This form can also be combined with verbs such as 되다 or 괜찮다 to mean "it's okay if (you do something)." This is a common way of asking or giving *permission*.

컴퓨터를 써도 돼요?

"Can I use the computer?"

가도 괜찮아요?

"Is it okay if I leave?"

noun + (이)라도

Here's how to add a bit of emphasis to "even."

When 도 is added to the verb 이다 in the form ~아/어/etc + 도, it can become (이)라도.

Take a noun and add 이라도 if it ends in a **consonant**, or 라도 if it ends in a **vowel**.

Another way to translate this would be "even if (you are)."

제가 미국 사람**이라도** 한국말을 잘 할 수 있어요.

"Even though I'm an American, I can speak Korean well."

스코틀랜드에서는 남자**라도** 치마를 입어요.

"In Scotland, even men wear skirts."

Advanced Notes

noun + 조차

Another way to show emphasis is by using 조차 after a noun. It's used in the same way as 도 to mean "even," but has more emphasis – "**even**."

엄마**조차** 할 수 없다!

"Even mother can't do it!"

선생님조차 풀 수 없는 문제

"a problem even the teacher can't solve"

풀다 means "to solve (a problem/question)."

noun + 까지

As we've learned before, 까지 means "(up) until." However, it is also used to mean "even" when expressing a **limit**, and to show something is included in that limit.

나까지 가도 괜찮아?

"Is it okay if even I go?"

숨겨 둔 것까지 다 먹다니!

"You even ate everything I had hidden!"

숨겨 두다 means "to hide (for later)."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 54: "As soon as"

Let's go over how to say "as soon as," such as "As soon as he arrived, I wanted to leave."

v.s. + 자마자

Take a verb stem (a verb with the 다 at the end removed) and attach 자마자. That's it. Then finish the rest of the sentence.

Here are some example verbs conjugated:

하다 → 하자마자

먹다 → 먹자마자

놀다 → 놀자마자

공부하다 → 공부하자마자

한국에 **도착하자마자** 김치를 사 먹었다.

"As soon as I arrived in Korea I had kimchi."

도착하다 means "to arrive," and 사 먹다 means "to (buy and) eat."

밖에 **나가자마자** 비가 내리기 시작했다.

"As soon as I went outside, it started to rain."

밖에 means "outside," and 비(가) 내리다 means "to rain."

월급을 **받자마자** 다 써 버렸다.

"As soon as I received my paycheck I spent it all."

월급 means "(monthly) salary," and 써 버리다 means "to use (completely)."

침대에 **눕자마자** 잠이 들었다.

"As soon as I lied down in bed I fell asleep."

눕다 means "to lie (down)," and 잠(이) 들다 means "to fall asleep."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 55: "Though"

In Korean, there are several different grammar forms you can use to connect sentences together, and each one has different meanings. Here are a couple of examples.

먹고 가요.

"I'll eat **and** go."

저는 미국 사람이지만 한국어도 할 수 있어요.

"I'm an American, **but** I can also speak Korean."

But these grammar forms can sometimes be a bit *strong*. What if there was a softer way to connect sentences together? For example, take these two sentences.

"I want to go, **but** I have no money." versus "**Though** I have no money, I want to go."

The first one using "but" is a bit stronger, since "but" is a *conjunction* - it *separates* the two parts of the sentences. The second one *breaks the sentence* apart a bit more softly.

"Though" isn't necessarily a "but," and it simply connects two sentences together that are related to each other, kind of like using a **semicolon** in English.

"I'm an American, **but** I can speak Korean."

"**Though** I'm American, I can speak Korean."

"I'm an American; I can speak Korean."

What we're going to learn is how to translate "though" into Korean, or more specifically, how to connect two related sentences together a bit more softly.

Action Verb Stem + 는데 (Conjugated) Descriptive Verb Stem + ㄴ/은데

For action verbs, which are verbs that *do* something, such as to eat, or to go, among others, take the verb stem and attach 는데.

UPDATE: My video does not properly explain the conjugation for all descriptive verb types, and I apologize. Here is an updated and much simpler version for how to conjugate descriptive verbs with this form. I've included many extra examples.

A simpler way to make this form is to take the descriptive verb and conjugate it as if you are conjugating as an *adjective*. You can check out my video "Learn Korean Ep. 70: Adjectives" for information about how to do this (<https://youtu.be/suipPZlHrVo>).

Once you've done that, simply attach 데 to the end. Here are a few examples of several different descriptive verb types.

크다 → 큰
큰 + 데 → 큰데

길다 → 긴
긴 + 데 → 긴데

하고 싶다 → 하고 싶은
하고 싶은 + 데 → 하고 싶은데

작다 → 작은
작은 + 데 → 작은데

착하다 → 착한
착한 + 데 → 착한데

춥다 → 추운
추운 + 데 → 추운데

예쁘다 → 예쁜
예쁜 + 데 → 예쁜데

재미있다 → 재미있는
재미있는 + 데 → 재미있는데

For the **past tense**, you can conjugate the descriptive verb as if you were conjugating the past tense 요 form (but without adding the 아/어 and 요), and instead attach 는데. For example:

친절했어요 → 친절했
친절했 + 는데 → 친절했는데

어려웠어요 → 어려웠
어려웠 + 는데 → 어려웠는데

작았어요 → 작았
작았 + 는데 → 작았는데

For the **future tense**, you can attach 겠는데 to the descriptive verb stem. Or, you can attach ㄴ데 to the 것이다 future tense form. For example:

먹겠다 → 먹겠는데
Or, 먹을 건데 (먹을 것인데)

출겠다 → 출겠는데
Or, 추울 건데 (추울 것인데)

있겠다 → 있겠는데
Or, 있을 건데 (있을 것인데)

First let's take a look at using this form in the *middle of a sentence*, to combine two phrases into one longer sentence. In this way, you're using it to work like a **semicolon** in English - a semicolon is used to connect two separate phrases that are related to each other, such as "I like school; I hate homework."

If you want to translate this grammar form to English more naturally, feel free to use either "but," "and" or "though," depending on what fits best. Just know that its actual usage is simply to connect two related sentences together.

우산을 안 가져 왔는데 비가 온다.

"It's raining, **though** I didn't bring my umbrella."

우산 means "umbrella," and 가져 오다 means "to bring [something]."

먹고 싶은데 돈이 없어서 못 먹어요.

"I want to eat, **but** I have no money so I can't."

학교에 갔는데 아무도 없었어요.

"I went to school, **and** nobody was there."

Now let's take a look at using this form at the *end of a sentence*. When using it at the end of a sentence, it works just the same way - remember to add a 요 if you're speaking politely. In English, you can think of this as ending your sentence with the word "though."

아닌데요.

"It's not, though."

집에 있는데요.

"Well he's at home though."

벌써 갔는데요.

"He already left though."

벌써 means "already," and is used when you're showing surprise at something.

Note that sentences will have a *rising intonation* when this form is used the **end**.

Also note that two of the above three sentences use different *tenses*. This grammar form can be used in any tense you'd like, in which case, first conjugate the **Plain Form** of the verb, and then use the verb stem of that to create this form. You can also watch my video to learn how to conjugate this form on YouTube (**Learn Korean Ep. 17: Plain Form**).

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 56: Object Marker

Let's learn about the *Object Marker* in Korean.

Object Marker - 을/를

The *Object Marker* has one major use in Korean - it marks the object of a verb. In English, the object is whatever is receiving an action. For example, take this sentence:

저는 공을 찼어요.
"I kicked the ball."

Here, "kicked" is the **verb**, and "ball" is the **object**.

Here's another sentence:

제가 과자를 먹었어요.
"I ate the candy."

In this sentence, "to eat" is the verb, and it's being used in the past tense - "ate." And what is it that I ate? Snacks. Snacks is what is *receiving* the action of the verb, so snacks is the *object* of the sentence. Because it's an object, we need to mark it with an *Object Marker*.

The Object Marker is 을 if it comes after a *consonant*, and 를 if it comes after a *vowel*.

난 널 좋아해.
"I like you."

난 is an abbreviation of 난, and 널 is an abbreviation of 너를.

왜 공부를 안 했어요?
"Why didn't you study?"

Here, the object marker is showing the object of the verb, 안 했어요, as being the noun "study."

시간을 봐요! 빨리 가야 돼요!

"Look at the time! I have to go right now!" or *literally*, "I have to go quickly!"

Here, 시간 is the object of the verb 보다.

누가 내 오렌지를 먹어도 된다고 했어?

"Who said it was okay to eat my orange?"

Here the object marker is describing the object of the verb, 먹다.

However, there are many cases in English where you use an object, that in Korean you don't.

For example, in verbs like "say," "tell" or "give," English often attaches the receiver of the action directly to the verb.

나는 그에게 나가라고 말했다.

"I told **him** to leave."

나는 그에게 공을 주었다.

Or "I gave **him** the ball"

Notice that even though in English these use "him" (or "her," "it," etc.) as the object, in Korean they're marked with the "to" (에게) particle. You can learn about this "to" particle more in my other video on that (**Learn Korean Ep. 8: "To" and "from" a person**). Verbs that are related to *communication*, such as "tell" or "say" or "call," and "give" will not use the *Object Marker*, but will use the particle **에게** such as in the previous examples.

Advanced Notes

The Object Marker is actually *optional* when used in *casual speech*, and will most often not be said. However, knowing how to use it is essential - whether you use it when speaking to friends is your choice. I would recommend leaving it off when talking to close friends, and using it when speaking to people who are older than you, or not close to you.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 57: Sentence Structure

Let's learn about basic Korean sentence structure.

Basic Korean Sentence Structure

What's sentence structure? Well, take a look at this example sentence in English:

"I yesterday the dog walked at night the store to."

Sentence structure is how words or phrases are put together in a language - like syntax. In Korean, it's important to use proper sentence structure, or your sentences can be confusing. Let's take a look at some basic sentence structure forms to use.

First of all, English is a **Subject Verb Object** language, meaning the subject goes first, followed by a verb, and then the object. In the sentence "I kicked the ball," "I" is the *subject*, "kicked" is the *verb*, and "the ball" is the *object*. Korean, however, works using a **Subject Object Verb** structure. In Korean, the same sentence would therefore be organized as "I the ball kicked." This is perhaps the most basic thing to learn about the Korean language. Once you have a good understanding of how Korean puts objects before verbs, then learning everything else can come a bit more quickly.

저는 과자를 먹어요.

"I eat snacks."

Not only objects, but locations also will go before a verb.

저는 학교에 가요.

"I go to school."

This is the same order for going to a location as it is when there's something at or in a location.

저는 학교에서 공부해요.

"I study at school."

But sentences aren't this simple in any language. You also want to say *when* something happens too.

In English, we most often add the time that something happens at the beginning of a sentence, or at the very end of a sentence; in Korean, it is most commonly added to the *beginning* of a sentence or phrase. Take whatever normal sentence you were making without a time, and add the time right at the beginning.

오늘 저는 학교에서 공부할 거예요.

"Today I will study at school."

It's also acceptable to add the time after the subject.

저는 오늘 학교에서 공부할 거예요.

"Today I will study at school."

Doing this will have the same meaning, but it'll make the time a bit more emphasized.

When you want to be a bit more specific, state time going from the largest units to the smallest ones. For example:

오늘 오후 2 시 30 분에 학교에 가요.

"Today I'm going to school at 2:30 P.M."

"Today" is the largest unit of time, followed by the time of day - here 오후, P.M., followed by the hour, and then the minute.

But sentences like this can be a bit bland. There are no adverbs or adjectives, which help to add depth to sentences by adding more information to them.

In English, we can put adverbs after verbs, or before. The sentences "I dance slowly" or "I slowly dance" can both be fine in English, but in Korean things don't work that way. Adverbs in Korean should be added *directly before* the verb they're describing.

내일 집에서 열심히 공부할 거예요.
"Tomorrow I'll study hard at home."

Fortunately, adjectives work the same way as they do in English. Put an adjective *directly before* the noun it's describing in a sentence.

저는 더러운 방에서 공부할 수 없어요.
"I can't study in a dirty room."

If you have multiple adjectives, connect them together, and conjugate just the last one before the noun.

저는 크고 맛있는 케이크를 먹고 싶어요.
"I want to eat a big and delicious cake."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 58: Should and Should Not

Let's learn how to say "should" and "should not" in Korean.

Should:

Verb Stem + 면 좋다

Take the verb stem, and attach 면, then the verb 좋다. This literally means, "It's good if you do something."

빨리 숙제하면 좋아요.

"You should hurry up and do your homework."

병원에 가면 좋아요.

"You should go to the hospital."

한국어를 더 열심히 공부하면 좋아요.

"You should study Korean harder."

Should Not:

Verb Stem + 면 안 되다

Take the verb stem, and attach 면, then the verb 안 되다. This literally means, "It won't be good if you do something."

빨간 불에 길을 건너면 안 돼요.

"You shouldn't cross the street when it's a red light." (건너다 = "to cross")

그거 먹으면 안 돼요.

"You shouldn't eat that."

수업 시간에 자면 안 돼요.

"You shouldn't sleep in class time."

Advanced Notes:

There are additional ways to say "should."

Verb Stem + 면 되다

This literally means "It's good if you do something." 되다 in this usage means "to be okay" or "to be acceptable."

그냥 하면 돼요.

"You should just do it."

하면 된다.

"You should do it."

This is one of the Korean military's mottos.

Verb Stem + 는 것이 낫다

This literally means "It's better to do." 낫다 means "to be preferred" or "to be better."

가는 게 나아요.

"You should go."

게 is an abbreviation of 것이.

Notice how 낫다 conjugates to 나(아)요 in the 요 form. You can also use this with adverbs such as 더 (더 낫다 = "even/much better").

There are also additional ways to say "should not."

Negative Verb Stem + 는 것이 낫다

This literally means "It's better to not do." Its usage is the same as the above form, only opposite.

안 하는 게 낫다.

"It's better if you don't."

Verb Stem + 면 안 좋다

This literally means "It's not good if you do."

거기 가면 안 좋아요.

"It's not good if you go there." Or, "You shouldn't go there."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 59: "Used to"

Let's learn how to say "used to" in Korean.

Verb Stem + **곤 하다**

Take the verb stem and attach **곤**, then the verb **하다**, which means "to do."

주말에 할머니 집에 가**곤 했어요**.

"I used to go to my grandmother's house on the weekends."

어릴 때 술을 많이 마시**곤 했어요**.

"I used to drink a lot of alcohol when I was young."

혼자서 밥을 먹**곤 했어요**.

"I used to eat alone."

지난 학기에 도서관에서 숙제를 하**곤 했어요**.

"I used to do my homework at the library last semester."

일본어를 공부하**곤 했지만** 지금은 한국어를 공부해요.

I used to study Japanese, but now I study Korean.

Advanced Notes:

Note that this **곤 하다** form is not very commonly used. It's much more common to simply use the double past tense to mean "used to." You can combine this with words such as **옛날에** ("a long time ago") or other words that indicate the past ("last year," etc.), if you'd like.

(옛날에) 자주 갔**었어요**.

"I used to go there often."

Adding words that indicate the past is optional, as I've marked with parentheses.

작년에 했**었어요**.

"I used to do it last year."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 60: Korean Pronunciation

Korean pronunciation can be a bit tricky, because it's quite different from English pronunciation. This episode will cover a few important pronunciation tips on commonly mispronounced Korean sounds.

ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ

In order to compare these three sounds, let's add a vowel.

가, 까, 카

Let's take a look at them one at a time.

가

This is a cross between a "k" and a "g" in English. It's not a hard sound like "k" in the word "kite," but it's also not a hard "g" sound either like "good." However, if you have to pick one, I'd say it's a bit closer to a "g" than a "k." If you say a soft "g," your pronunciation will be accurate.

까

This next one is actually the same sound as the first, but it's said in a different way. If before saying 가, you take a quick *pause*, stopping your mouth from moving, it will come out as this double version, 까.

Instead of saying 가, take a quick pause beforehand, 까. It might help to compare what this sounds like when it's in the middle of a word.

아가, 아까

Take the above two sounds. 아가 and 아까. The first one, 아가, is simply said straightforward. The second one, however, is 아, and then there's a quick pause. 아까. You can hear it right

after the **아** is said; there is a small pause, as if the speaker is taking a break between the two sounds. **아까**, sounds different from **아가** because of the *pause* between the two letters. This pause is what naturally gives the **까** its distinct sound.

카

The final one, **카**, is equivalent to a hard “k” sound in English. It should be pretty straightforward to make.

Although these sounds may seem similar to an English speaker, and might not seem that important, to a Korean, they’re extremely important, and using the wrong one will be like saying a different word.

Let’s take a look at an example.

기, 끼, 키

기 means energy, **끼** means a meal, and **키** means height. Switching these up can easily lead to a misunderstanding, so remember to practice how these sounds differ, and to make sure they sound unique from each other.

And here’s another tip for practicing. Try saying **가**, **까**, and **카** on your own, and hold up a *piece of paper* in front of your mouth. When saying **가**, the piece of paper should move a tiny bit. When saying **까**, though, the paper shouldn’t move noticeably at all. However, saying **카** should cause the paper to shake. If you’re trying to say one or the other, and are wondering if you’re saying it correctly, you can check yourself with a piece of paper and this method.

All other letters work the same way as these ones. Once you’re comfortable with **가**, **까**, and **카**, you’ll be comfortable with the others.

어, 오, 으

Another few commonly confused sounds are these. 어, 오, and 으. The first one, 어, sounds similar to the "uh" sound at the beginning of the word "annoying." 어. The second one, 오, sounds just like the letter O in English. You can also think of it like the "O" sound in the word "oak." 오. And the third one, 으, sounds like the "oo" sound in the word "good." It might also remind you of the sound of being punched in the stomach.



This sound is another one that's often misunderstood. You can think of it as being close to an English "l," but not an "r."

Some lessons might say that this is an "r" at the beginning of a word and an "l," at the end of a word, but this is actually incorrect. The letter's sound does not actually change, so that's good news for us.

In order to make this sound, place your tongue on the top of your mouth, as if you're going to say the letter "d." Practice by preparing to say "da," but instead, saying "la." And there you go.

에, 애

The biggest difference between these two, is honestly just the spelling. They can both be pronounced the same, as ऐ.

If you want to know the actual difference, 애| is said with the lips *slightly* wider, 애|. Most Koreans don't even know the difference between the two, and you won't hear much of a difference either. Feel free to pronounce these both the same way.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 61: How to say "you" in Korean

You'd think that this lesson would consist of only one word, but actually there are many ways to say "you" in Korean, and all of them can be correct.

The correct way to say "you" in Korean depends entirely on the situation you're in, who you're talking to, your own status, and how you want to sound.

If you're a first time learner, and want a really quick answer without watching the entire video, then here you go: you don't need to say "you" in Korean at all. If you're asking a question to a person, it's assumed that you're already talking to them, so you don't need to say "you."

But sometimes, you really do need to say "you." What if you ask a question, and the person asks you who you're talking to? Or what if you're speaking to a group of people, and want to specifically talk to one person? How about if you just want to say "you" when asking a question anyway, even if it's not necessary?

Let's go over a few common ways you can use.

Using Names

A simple way is by saying the other person's name. For example, to your friend 김철수, you can simply use his name 철수 in a sentence.

철수도 그렇게 생각해?

Do you think so too? (to 철수)

Also, if you use this method, you'll need to know that if your friend's name ends in a vowel, as does 철수, you can use it on its own like in the example sentence. However, if their name ends in a consonant, you'll need to add 이 after in order to use it in a sentence.

지민이도 그렇게 생각해?

Do you think so too? (to 지민)

GO! Billy Korean

But this method can only be used with friends. If you're not close friends, you can add a 씨 after their name, which means "Mr." or "Mrs." You can also add a 씨 after their last name.

김 씨
Mr. Kim

Using Titles

But what if you don't know the other person's name, or what if you don't want to call someone by their name? In these cases, you'll want to use a person's title.

A title can be anything from 누나, for an older sister, to 선생님, a teacher, or even 사장님, a boss. Of course, use the appropriate word depending on who you're speaking to. If you're a male speaking to an older female friend, you'd use 누나, but if you're a female you'd use 언니, and so forth.

Here are a few examples:

누나도 가요?
Are you going too? (As a male, to an older female friend)

오빠도 가요?
Are you going too? (As a female, to an older male friend)

선생님이 언제 오세요?
When are you coming? (To a teacher)

Also, if speaking to someone older, you can use 선생님 to an older man, which translates as "Sir," or 아저씨 to an older man, or 아줌마 to an older woman. In addition, to an elderly woman, you can use 할머니, which means grandmother, or 할아버지, which means grandfather (even if they're not your own grandmother and grandfather).

Essentially, what you want to do is use the person's *name* who you're referring to, if they're a good friend of yours, or use their *title*, if they're someone who you should show respect to, such as a boss or a teacher or someone older than you.

너

If you're just talking with friends, however, you also have another option that you can use to say "you."

However, be careful. 너 is okay to use with close friends who are the same age as you or younger, but not to people who are older than you, even if you're friends with them. Using 너 is extremely rude in any other situation.

넌 왜 안 가?

Why aren't you going?

넌 is a shortening of 너는.

But what if you don't know the person you're saying "you" to at all? What if you don't know their name, or their title, or their age, or anything about them that would let you know the best way to refer to them? Well in that case, here are two more words you can use.

당신

당신 is the most common word for "you" that you will find in *textbooks*. However, it's not used commonly in speech. But if you really have no idea how to refer to a stranger, and you feel that you need to emphasize "you" in a sentence, you can use this. Other times, besides textbooks, you might hear this word used between married couples, in which case it could translate as "dear." Because of that, and because although 당신 isn't rude, it isn't polite either, it's probably best to avoid using this one.

그쪽

A better word you can use, when you don't know how to refer to a stranger, is 그쪽. 그쪽 literally means "that side," and it's a polite, safe way to say "you" to a stranger.

그쪽은 한국 사람이세요?

Are you a Korean?

However, as soon as you know the other person's name, or title, or anything about them that would let you know how to call them, it's best to switch away from using 그쪽.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 62: Prepositions

Today we're going to learn about prepositions. What's a *preposition*? In English, we can say that a preposition is wherever an airplane can be in relation to a cloud. For example, an airplane can go above the cloud, or next to the cloud, or behind it, or inside, or outside, and et cetera. Korean has similar words as well, however, they work a bit differently.

Take this sentence in English as an example:

"I am **outside** of the house."

Notice how 'outside' comes *before* 'house'. In Korean, it's the opposite – 'house' will come *before* 'outside'. All prepositions in Korean will go *after* the noun. If you want to get technical, because of this, in Korean they're actually not called prepositions, but they're called *postpositions*, since they come after, but that's not really important. Let's learn a few.

위 = "above," "on"

아래 = "below"

앞 = "front"

뒤 = "behind"

옆 = "side"

안 = "inside"

밖 = "outside"

This is definitely not a complete list of prepositions, but it's several of the more common ones you'll see. Let's take a look at a few example sentences.

가방이 책상 **위에** 있어요.

The bag is on the desk.

저는 학교 **앞에** 있어요.

I'm in front of the school.

우리 집 뒤에 갔어요.

He went behind our house.

내 옆에 있어 줘요.

Stay by my side.

환자가 병원 안에 있어요.

The patient is in the hospital.

차가 밖에 있어요.

The car is outside.

There are many more prepositions, so once you've gotten the hang of how they work, go ahead and learn a few more. Knowing prepositions will help to make your Korean sound much more natural, and allow you to say more things than you normally could.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 63: About

Today I wanted to cover how to say "about" in Korean. It's simple, but you will use a different word depending on whether you're using it as an *adverb*, or using it as an *adjective*. You'll see what I mean. Let me give you an example in English.

"I read a book **about** food."

"I read **about** food."

Take a look at these two sentences. Although they both use the same "about" in English, in Korean, these will be different. In the first sentence, "about" is describing the type of book – it's a book that's about food. In the second sentence, "about" is an *adverb*; it's not describing a noun, but it's describing the verb, "read." Let's take a look at the same two sentences in Korean.

저는 음식에 대한 책을 읽었어요.

저는 음식에 대해서 읽었어요.

The first sentence and the second sentence use a slightly different form for the word "about." The first sentence uses 음식에 대한 책, which means "a book about food," and the second sentence uses just 음식에 대해서, which means "about food."

If you're saying "about," and it's followed by a *noun*, such as in the first example with 책, you'll use this form:

Noun + 에 대한 + Noun

Take a noun, whatever it is that you want to say "about" for, and attach 에, then 대한, then another noun that you're describing.

음식에 대한 책

"a book about food"

사랑에 대한 노래

"a song about love"

저는 한국에 대한 영화를 봤어요.

I saw a movie about Korea.

But if you're saying "about," and it's followed directly after by a *verb*, that means it's being used as an *adverb*, and you'll use this form instead:

Noun + 에 대해(서) + Verb

Take a noun, whatever it is that you want to say "about" for, and attach 에, then 대해 or 대해서. The 서 is completely *optional*. Then attach the verb.

미술에 대해 공부했어요.

I studied about art.

한국어에 대해서 배우고 싶어요.

I want to learn about Korean.

미국 역사에 대해 알고 있어요?

Do you know about American history?

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 64: Easy to, Hard to

Today I wanted to cover a few grammatical forms that you can use to say that something is easy to do, or hard to do.

Easy to:

Verb Stem + 기(가) 쉽다

To say that something is easy to do, take a verb stem, and attach 기, then optionally you can add the Subject Marker 가. Then add 쉽다, which means "to be easy."

한국어 배우기가 쉬워요.

It's easy to learn Korean.

요리하기가 아주 쉬워요.

It's very easy to cook.

하기가 쉽지 않아요.

It's not easy to do it.

Hard to:

Verb Stem + 기(가) 어렵다

To say that something is hard or difficult to do, take a verb stem, and attach 기, then optionally 가. Then add 어렵다, which means "to be hard," or "to be difficult."

한국어로 빨리 말하기가 정말 어려워요.

It's really hard to speak quickly in Korean.

차가운 스테이크를 먹기가 어려워요.

It's difficult to eat cold steak.

책을 쓰기가 어려워요.

It's hard to write a book.

You can also use this form for other things as well, such as with the descriptive verb 무섭다, which means "to be scary."

Afraid to:
Verb Stem + 기(가) 무섭다

공포 영화 보기가 무서워요.

I'm afraid to watch horror movies.

공포 영화 means "horror movie."

You can also actually use *any descriptive verb* here, which you can use to describe whatever action that you want.

공부하기가 지루해요.

Studying is boring.

지루하다 means "to be boring."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 65: "But"

There are a few different ways to say "but" depending on the sentence you're using it in. Let's take a look at the most common, and useful ways.

Verb Stem + 지만

This is the simplest way to say "but." Take a verb stem, which is just a verb with the 다 removed, and attach 지만. That's it.

저는 미국 사람이**지만** 한국어도 할 수 있어요.
"I'm an American, but I can speak Korean too."

저는 매운 음식을 못 먹**지만** 김치는 잘 먹어요.
"I can't eat spicy food, but I can eat kimchi."

어제 밤에 늦게 잤**지만** 오늘 일찍 일어났어요.
"I slept late last night, but I woke up early today."

But what if you want to add "but" or "however" to your sentence, but you want to add it after you've finished a sentence already? That's easy too, just use this same grammar form, but with the verb 하다, to get 하지만. You can start a sentence with 하지만, and it'll be just like starting a sentence with "but" in English.

하지만

하지만 우산이 있어서 비를 안 맞았어요.
"But I had an umbrella so I didn't get wet."

그렇지만

Another word you can use similarly is 그렇지만, which has more of a "however" kind of feel to it.

그렇지만 누가 했는지 알아요.
"However, I know who did it."

그러나

And if you want a stronger meaning, there's one more option that you also have – 그러나. 그러나 has a strong "however" meaning. You can use it in the same way as 하지만 or 그렇지만.

그러나 커피는 가지고 들어가지 못해요.
"However, you can't bring coffee inside."

Advanced Notes:

Another common way to say "but" or "however" is by using 그런데. In casual speech, this shortens to 근데. This word originally comes from the 데 form. You can also think of this as ending your sentence with "though" in English.

그런데 제가 안 했어요.
"But I didn't do it." Or, "I didn't do it *though*." You can translate it whichever way you'd like.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 66: 버리다

Today I wanted to talk about a useful verb that you can use to add extra *emotion* to your sentences – 버리다. This verb by itself means “to throw away,” but we’re going to be using it differently. Let’s take a look at how to use it.

Verb Stem + 어/아/etc. 버리다

To make this form, first take a verb and conjugate it as if you were conjugating the 요 form, but don’t add the 요. Instead, follow that with the verb 버리다 and conjugate it.

Using this form does not change the meaning of your sentence at all, but what it does do is add extra emotion to what you’re saying – this emotion can be both good and bad, and it only depends on the sentence to know which one it is. Let’s first take a look at how using this form can show a positive emotion:

숙제를 다 끝내 버렸어요.

“I finished all of my homework.”

And here’s an example of 버리다 that shows a negative emotion.

아! 잊어 버렸어요!

Ah! I forgot!

If you don’t get it right away, that’s okay. It will take a bit of getting used to. Here are a few more sentences that use 버리다. You should be able to guess whether the meaning is *negative* or *positive*.

강아지가 케이크를 다 먹어 버렸어요.

“The puppy ate all of the cake.”

옷을 3 벌이나 사 버렸어요.

“I bought 3 new pairs of clothes.”

숙제가 비에 젖어 버렸어요.

"The homework got wet in the rain."

너무 빨리 일어나 버렸어요.

"I woke up too early."

Finally, note that although this form is used for showing both good and bad emotions, it's *more often* commonly used just to show something that's *negative*. But you might see both ways, so keep an eye out for it in positive sentences too.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 67: 수록

Today we're going to be covering a useful Korean grammar form – 수록. This form is pretty useful, and this is what you can do with it.

빠르면 빠를수록 더 좋아요.

"The quicker you do it, the better."

Using 수록 gives us the meaning of, "the more you do something, the more that something else happens." Before we go over some more examples, let's first learn how to make it:

***Optionally: (Verb Stem + (으)면...) +
Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 수록***

To make it, take a verb stem and attach 을 if it ends in a consonant, or attach just a 리을 if it ends in a vowel. *Optionally*, you can also add the "if" form using 면 before this form. So now let's take a look at some examples of 수록.

한국어를 공부할수록 한국에 더 가고 싶어져요.

"The more I study Korean, the more I want to go to Korea."

이 과자를 먹으면 먹을수록 엄마가 생각나요.

"The more that I eat this candy, the more that I think of my mom."

돈을 벌수록 더 많이 벌고 싶어요.

"The more money you earn, the more that you want to earn."

화장을 할수록 더 예뻐지는 거 같아요.

"I think that the more makeup I use, the prettier I look."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 68: "Toward"

Today we're going to be covering a useful Korean particle that you can use – 으로.

This particle is used frequently to mean "to" or "toward," and is specifically used with verbs that show some sort of *motion* – for example, 가다, to go, 오다, to come, and more. By "toward," I mean "in the *direction* of."

Noun + (으)로

To make it, take a *noun*, which will be a *location*, and attach 으로 if it ends in a *consonant*, or just 로 if it ends in a *vowel*. If the location ends in a 리을 though, also just attach 로 to the end.

Let's take a look at a few examples:

집으로 갔어요.

"I went home."

학교로 오세요.

"Please come to school."

저는 지금 집으로 가고 있어요.

"I'm going (toward) home now."

책상 밑으로 밀었어요.

"I pushed it underneath the desk."

지붕으로 올라갔어요.

"I went up to the roof."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 69: "Do it for later"

Today we're going to be learning about two important verbs we can use to attach to our sentences – 놓다 and 두다. Literally, 놓다 and 두다 both mean "to put something down," but when they're used in a sentence with another verb, the meaning changes a bit. First let's learn how to use these verbs, then let's talk about what they mean.

Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 놓다

Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 두다

To make it, first take a verb and conjugate it as if you were conjugating the 요 form. Instead of attaching 요, follow this with the verb 놓다, or 두다.

When using 놓다 or 두다, the meaning of the sentence is that you're doing something *in advance*, and *for later*.

For example, take the verb 청소하다, "to clean" or "to vacuum." You could clean up the house in advance, or clean up the house *for later*.

오늘 집을 청소할 거예요.

"Today I'll clean the house."

This sentence is perfectly fine, but we can add 놓다 or 두다 to the end to add the meaning that you're doing this in advance for something else, or for later. Let's take a look.

오늘 집을 청소해 놓을 거예요.

"Today I'll clean the house (for later)."

Perhaps you have guests coming, and you want to express that the reason you're cleaning the house is in preparation for that. It doesn't matter what it is that you're doing something *in advance for*, or what's going to happen *later*. All that matters is that using this form expresses that you're doing something for something else that will happen in the future, and that you're *getting ready* for it.

Here are a few more sentences.

샌드위치를 만들어 놓을게요.

"I'll make some sandwiches for later."

오늘 밤까지 설거지를 해 뒀.

"Do the dishes by tonight."

신발을 여기에 벗어 놓을게요.

"I'll take off my shoes here."

내일까지 여행 갈 준비를 해 놓으세요.

"Get ready to go on the trip by tomorrow."

기억해 둘게요.

"I'll remember that for later."

Of these two forms, you'll find that 놓다 is used a bit *more often*, but know that either one will be grammatically fine.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 70: Adjectives

An *adjective* in English, as many of you know, is a word used to *describe* a noun.

For example, you can have just "a house," or you can have "a big house," or "a small house" et cetera. House is the *noun* while **big** and **small** are *adjectives*.

In Korean, adjectives also come before the noun. Let's take a look at an example.

First we have just 집, for "a house." But we can add 큰 to the beginning and get "a big house" – 큰 집. Or "a small house" – 작은 집.

큰 here is an **adjective**, and 집 is a **noun**.

If this is your first time seeing adjectives, you might be thinking this to yourself:

"If I just learn a bunch of these adjectives, like 큰 or 작은, and a bunch of nouns like 집, then I'll be fine."

But actually, these adjectives aren't quite what they seem. In Korean, adjectives like these actually originally come from **verbs**. Specifically, these are called "descriptive verbs," because they're verbs which are used for *describing* things, and can be changed into adjectives. This is different from an action verb such as "to do" or "to eat," which are actions. So in Korean, a *verb can become an adjective*.

Verb Stem + ㄴ/은

The verb for "to be big" is 크다. To change "to be big" into an adjective, "big," we'll first need to remove the 다 at the end, just like when conjugating any verb.

크다 → 크

After removing the **다**, take a look at the stem that's left over – here we just have **크**. If the stem ends in a **vowel**, you'll want to add just a **니은** to the end, and if the stem ends in a **consonant**, you'll add **은** to the end.

큰

Since **크** ends in the — vowel, we'll add **ㄴ**, so it becomes **큰**. Now we can use the verb “to be big” as an adjective – “big.”

The same goes for the verb “to be small” – **작다**.

작다 → 작

After removing the **다** we're left with **작**, which ends in a *consonant*, so we'll add **은** to the end and get **작은** – the adjective for “small.”

작은

After we've made the adjectives for these verbs, we can stick them before any noun we'd like. Previously we used **집**, but you can use any noun, such as **머리** for “head.” You can have **큰 머리** or **작은 머리**, “a big head” or “a small head,” or any noun you'd like.

You need to know how to conjugate verbs into adjectives because verbs can be used in many ways. If you were to only memorize **큰** and **작은** but not memorize **크다** and **작다**, then you'd be unable to use **크다** and **작다** for anything. Basically, you need to know how to conjugate verbs so that you'll have a larger vocabulary without having to memorize thousands of extra combinations. It might seem a pain at first, but once you've practiced it a bit, conjugating a verb into an adjective will become much easier, and you won't have to think about it.

철수 씨는 **친절한** 사람이에요.
“Chul-soo is a nice person.”

정말 **좋은** 생각입니다.

"That's a really good idea."

So now we know how to change a descriptive verb which has a stem ending in a vowel, such as 크다, and also ones that end in a consonant, such as 작다. But there are a few other types of verbs and they'll conjugate into adjectives differently.

Verb Stems Ending in ㅁ

After removing the 다 at the end of a *descriptive verb*, if the stem ends in a single ㅁ, it'll conjugate differently. To conjugate it as an adjective, first remove the ㅁ, then add the syllable 우. Finally, add ㄴ to the bottom.

Let's take a look at the verb 어렵다, "to be difficult."

어렵다 → 어렵

First remove the 다.

어렵 → 어려

Then remove the ㅁ.

어려 + 우 → 어려우

Then add the syllable 우.

어려우 + ㄴ → 어려운

Then add ㄴ to the bottom.

어제 **어려운** 시험을 봤어요.

"Yesterday I had a difficult test."

It seems like a lot of steps, but when you've adjusted to it, all you're doing is removing the ㅁ and adding 운 to the end. So once you've had some practice, you'll be able to quickly go from 어렵다 to 어려운.

Verb Stems Ending in ㄹ

If the verb stem ends in ㄹ, it's pretty simple to change it to an adjective. Just remove the ㄹ at the bottom, and replace it with ㄴ.

Let's take a look at the descriptive verb 멀다, "to be far," or "to be distant."

멀다 – ㄹ → 머

First take away the ㄹ.

머 + ㄴ → 먼

Then add ㄴ, and you're done.

먼 나라로 여행가고 싶어요.

"I want to travel to a distant country."

Remember that this is only for verb stems that end in a *single* ㅍ, and not a double one, such as the descriptive verb 예쁘다, "to be pretty," which simply becomes 예쁜.

~있다

If the descriptive verb ends in 있다, such as 맛이 있다, "to be delicious," it also conjugates differently.

있다 will become 있는.

맛(이) 있다 → 맛(이) 있는

So the verb 맛이 있다 will become 맛이 있는.

맛있는 음식을 먹고 싶어요.

"I want to eat delicious food."

Or for a more natural translation, "I want to eat something good."

However, and this is a bit technical, but know that the verb 있다, which means “to exist,” is actually not a descriptive verb, but is an **action verb**. I’ve included it in this lesson though since it does appear inside of many descriptive verbs.

Conclusion

You’ll use these rules often in Korean, so take note of them and practice as much as possible.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 71: "Pretend to Do"

Today I wanted to talk about a useful verb that you can use when you want to say that you or someone else is "pretending to do" something or "acting like" something. Let's first take a look at an example in English to show you what I mean.

"I **pretended** that I was cold." Or, "I **acted** like I was cold."

In order to make these sentences, you'll need to learn the verb 척(을) 하다.

Adjective + 척(을) 하다

To use it, take an **adjective** and attach 척하다. Then conjugate 척하다 however you'd like in the sentence. Already now, we can translate our example sentence.

추운 척했어요.

"I pretended that I was cold." Or, "I acted like I was cold."

Let's take a look at a couple more example sentences.

안 무서운 척했어요.

"I pretended that I wasn't afraid." Or, "I acted like I wasn't afraid."

왜 아픈 척을 했어요?

"Why did you pretend you were hurt?"

귀여운 척하지 마.

"Don't act cute."

But what if you want to say that you pretended that you **did** something? Well, we wouldn't be using an adjective, since we want an *action verb* instead. It's pretty simple to use this form with an action verb too.

Action Verb Stem + 는 척(을) 하다

Take an action verb stem and attach 는.

먹다, "to eat," would become 먹는 척하다, "to pretend to eat," and 하다, "to do," would become 하는 척하다, "to pretend to do."

If the action verb ends in ㄹ at the bottom, remove the ㄹ and add 는.

알다, "to know," would become 아는 척하다, "to pretend to know." Let's take a look at a few examples.

밖에서 저를 아는 척하지 말아 주세요.

"Please don't act like you know me outside (of here)."

대화를 하기 싫어서 자는 척했어요.

"I didn't want to talk, so I pretended to be asleep."

저 사람은 고빌리의 동영상을 보면서 공부하는 척을 해요.

"That person pretends to study while watching Go Billy's videos."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 72: 더니

Before we start, I want to let you know that this lesson is a bit on the **Intermediate** side, so I wouldn't recommend watching this if you're still new to the Korean language. If you've already learned the basics and are ready for some more, then let's learn about another useful grammar form.

Show Contrast with 더니

더니 doesn't have a single way that it can be translated into English, and it depends on the sentence. Let's talk about the main usage of 더니 – for showing two sentences that are **contrasting**. For example, let's first take a look at this sentence in English.

"I went to my friend's house but nobody was there."

You can see how the first and second part of the sentence are **contrasting** with each other – they're opposites.

Before we talk more about it, let's learn how to use it.

Verb Stem + 더니

To use it, just take a *verb stem*, and this can be in any tense you'd like, and attach 더니 to the end. Then finish the rest of the sentence.

Let's take a look at our previous English example now in Korean using 더니.

친구 집에 갔더니 아무도 없었어요.

"I went to my friend's house but nobody was there."

Using 더니 in this way emphasizes that the two parts of the sentence are contrasting. There could be many reasons why you'd want to emphasize that, but perhaps it's because you're **surprised** at it. Here are a few more examples.

열심히 공부했더니 시험이 미뤄졌어요.

"I studied hard, but the test was postponed (and that surprised me)."

가게에 갔더니 물건이 이미 다 팔려 있었어요.

"I went to the store but everything was already sold out (and that surprised me)."

밤 늦게까지 잠을 자지 않더니 결국 늦게 일어났구나!

"You didn't sleep until it was late, and in the end you woke up late (and I'm surprised)!"

오랜만에 친구에게 전화를 했더니 전화 번호가 바뀌었어요.

"I hadn't called my friend for a long time and his phone number had changed (and that surprised me)."

Or, "I called my friend after not talking to him for a long time, and his phone number had changed."

You can see how 더니 can be used to show two **contrasting** events, and how using this form **emphasizes** that.

Conclusion

For a quick summary, 더니 can be used to emphasize that two things are contrasting, and therefore also shows your surprise at that.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 73: Whatever, Wherever, Whoever, Whenever

Today I wanted to talk about how to say the words "whatever," "wherever," "whoever," and "whenever." But instead of just teaching these four words, there's actually an easier way to remember them.

~든지

Making these words is simple if you just remember **든지**. Take the word that you want to make, for example, "whatever," and first take the word for "what" (뭐), then attach **든지**.

뭐 + 든지 = 든지 "whatever"

저는 **뭐든지** 다 잘 먹어요.

"I can eat whatever."

잘 먹다 literally means "to eat well," but you can also think of it as meaning "to enjoy eating" or "to have no problems eating."

The same goes for the other words, "wherever," "whoever," and "whenever."

어디 + 든지 = 어디든지 "wherever"

어디든지 여행가고 싶어요.

"I want to travel wherever."

누구 + 든지 = 누구든지 "whoever"

누구든지 할 수 있어요.

Although this would literally translate as "Whoever can do it," a better translation for **누구든지** in this case would be "Anyone can do it."

언제 + 든지 = 언제든지 “whenever”

언제든지 전화하세요.

“Call me whenever.”

Advanced Notes

You might also see these words with ~든 instead of ~든지. This is much less common, but has the same meaning.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 74: "Do it"

Today I wanted to talk about two ways that you can make **commands** in Korean. A command is basically telling someone, or commanding someone, to do something. For example, telling someone "do it" or "go" or "eat your vegetables."

But this doesn't mean that you have to act like a king ordering someone to do something. Commands in can be polite too. In English, we can simply add "please" before a command to make it polite. Instead of our previous three examples, we can have "please do it" or "please go" or "please eat your vegetables." We can also have polite commands in Korean. Making a polite command in Korean is simple. Here's how to make it.

Polite Command: Verb Stem + (으)세요

Take a verb stem, which is just a verb with the **다** removed, and attach **으세요** if it ends in a **consonant**, or attach **세요** if it ends in a **vowel**.

For a quick example, **하다** would become **하세요**, and **읽다** [pronounced "익따"] would become **읽으세요**.

However, if a verb stem ends in **ㄹ**, then you remove the **ㄹ** before using this form.

So **놀다**, "to play," would become **노세요**.

Here are a few examples of polite commands.

지금 하세요.

"Do it now (please)."

여기 보세요.

"Look here (please)."

사진을 찍으세요.

"Take a photo (please)."

"사진(을) 찍다" means "to take a photo."

밖에서 노세요. "Play outside (please)."

However, certain verbs will change completely when combined with this form. This is because this form is actually part of *honorific Korean speech*, which I'll talk about later. You don't need to learn it right now, but just know that the verb 먹다, "to eat," will become 드세요, and not 먹으세요. I'll talk about *honorific speech* more in a future video.

Using 세요 to make a command is useful in almost all situations, but it's not the best way to give a command to a *close friend*. Instead, when you're speaking *casually* to a friend who's the same age as you or younger, there's another way that you can make a command.

Making a casual command in Korean is simple if you know how to conjugate the 요 form. Here's how to make a casual command.

Casual Command:

요 Form – 요

Just take the 요 form, remove the 요 at the end, and you're done. Here are a few examples.

나가.

"Leave."

나가다 means "to leave," "to go out."

빨리 해!

"Do it quickly!"

김치를 더 먹어.

"Eat more kimchi."

Advanced Notes

요 Form – 요 + 주세요

While polite commands are appropriate for most situations, there will be times when you really want to say “please” in a sentence. To add the actual meaning of “please” (such as in “please do this for me”) when asking favors, add the verb 주다 (“to give”) conjugated with (으)세요. Here’s an example.

하다 → 해요 – 요 → 해 + 주세요 → 해 주세요.

저의 숙제를 해 주세요.

“Please do my homework (for me).”

저녁을 만들어 주세요.

“Please make dinner (for me).”

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 75: "To End up Doing"

Today I wanted to talk about another grammar form that you can use in your Korean sentences. However before I start, know that this lesson is geared more toward **Intermediate** speakers of Korean and probably won't be very useful to you if you're still just beginning with the language.

The form we'll talk about today is **고 말다**, and you can think of it as meaning "To end up doing." First let's take a look at an example sentence in English to show what I mean.

"Yesterday I was studying for the test, but I **ended up** falling asleep."

Let's talk about how to make this form.

Verb Stem + **고 말다**

First take a verb stem and attach **고**. Then attach the verb **말다**, and conjugate it. And just as in English, this form in Korean will most often be used in the **past tense**.

So let's go back to our sentence and translate it.

"어제 밤에 시험 준비를 위해 공부하고 있었는데 **잠들고 말았어요.**"

"Yesterday night I was studying to get ready for the test, but I **ended up falling asleep.**"

"잠(이) 들다" means "to fall asleep."

In addition, this form is generally used after you've *explained* something, just as it is in English. Just as you wouldn't randomly walk up to a friend and say "I ended up falling asleep," without first explaining what happened. Here are a few more examples.

조금만 먹으려고 했는데 결국 다 **먹고 말았어요.**

"I was only trying to eat a little, but eventually I **ended up eating** all of it."

깜짝 생일 파티를 준비하려고 했는데 다 들키고 말았어요.

"I was trying to prepare a surprise birthday party but it **ended up being found out.**"

들키다 means "to be found out."

쿠폰을 프린트해가려고 했는데 프린터기가 고장나고 말았어요.

"I was trying to print out a coupon but the printer **ended up breaking.**"

김밥을 만들려고 했는데 밥에 소금을 너무 많이 넣고 말았어요.

"I was trying to make kimbap, but I **ended up adding** too much salt."

Advanced Notes

In addition, you might have noticed this from reading the example sentences in this lesson, but this form is most often used to show something happening which was **unintentional** (and not something that was done on purpose). For example, you wouldn't commonly use this form to say "I was trying to find my keys, and eventually I ended up finding them," since that would show it was intentional, although using this form to say it wouldn't be necessarily wrong: 열쇠를 찾으려고 했는데 결국에 찾고 말았어요.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 76: "Contrary to what you might think..."

Today I wanted to talk about a new grammar form that you can use to express that something is **contrary** to what someone else may have been thinking.

But before we start, I should caution you that this lesson is geared more toward **Intermediate** speakers, and might not be as useful for people who are still beginning to learn the basics. Let's go right in and learn the form first.

Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 걸(요)

To make this form, first take a verb stem and attach ㄹ if it ends in a vowel, or attach 을 if it ends in a consonant. Then attach 걸. Finally, add a 요 if you want to be more polite.

Although there isn't a single literal translation for this form, a good way that you can think of it is as meaning "contrary to what you might think" or "contrary to what you might expect." In this way, it can be used to **disagree** with what the listener might have been *thinking* or *expecting*.

And although it's written as 걸, it's pronounced as **겻**, since it comes after ㄹ.

Also when using this form, only the very last syllable (걸 or 요, depending on whether you're speaking casually or not) will have a **rising intonation**. This is better conveyed in the video than in this PDF.

Let's take a look at a few examples.

아닐 겻요.

"(Contrary to what you might think,) it's not."

이미 도착했을 겻요.

"He would've already arrived (and you're mistaken about saying that he's not there yet)."

지금 가면 늦을 걸요.

"If you go now you'll be late (even if you think you'll make it in time)."

그렇게 하면 별로 맛없을 걸요.

"It won't taste so good if you do that (despite what you might think)."

Conclusion

However, know that this form is *not* appropriate in formal situations, even if you add the 요 to the end, since you're essentially telling someone that you're **disagreeing** with them. But for most general situations, as well as talking with friends, feel free to use it.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 77: "To Become"

Let's learn how to say "to become" in Korean. We'll need to learn a bit about a very common Korean word in order to do this.

되다 → "to become"

Literally, 되다 means "to become," but most of the time we won't be translating it as "to become" because there will be more natural ways to translate it. I'll explain.

되다 means "to become," as in "something/someone will become a certain thing/person in the future."

For example, in English you can have this sentence:

"After 5 years, I want to be a teacher."

In English, we use "to be" (a different verb from "to become") as a shorter form of "to become." So you could also write the same sentence like this:

"After 5 years, I want to become a teacher."

So let's make this sentence in Korean.

저는 5 년 뒤에, 선생님이 되고 싶어요.

So we can use the verb 되다 to mean that something will "become" something else. Here's the grammar form we'll need to know.

Noun + (이/가) 되다

To use this form, take a *noun* (what the person, or thing, is going to become), and attach the Subject Marker (이/가). Then conjugate the verb 되다.

저는 의사가 **되고 싶어요**.

"I want to be(come) a doctor."

정말 큰 문제가 **됐어요**.

"It became a really big problem."

우리는 좋은 친구가 **될 거예요**.

"We will be(come) good friends."

제가 원하면 한국 시민이 **될 수 있어요**.

"If I want, I can be(come) a Korean citizen."

시민 means "citizen."

So you can use 되다 in this way to say that someone or something will become something else, but this only lets you use it with **nouns**, just like in the examples.

However, there are other cases when you will want to say "to become," such as with descriptive verbs (or **adjectives**, if you'd like to call them that). For example, what if you want to say this sentence:

"Tomorrow the weather will **become** colder."

Or in more natural English, "Tomorrow the weather will **get** colder."

In this sentence, you can't use the verb 되다 because the weather isn't becoming a *noun*. Instead, the weather is becoming a *descriptive verb* – "colder." So we'll need a different grammar form to use with descriptive verbs.

While you could always just use the future tense to say 내일은 날씨가 더 추울 거예요, "tomorrow will be colder," this doesn't have the extra meaning of "becoming" (changing to **be**) colder that our English sentence does.

In order to say that tomorrow will "become colder," or in more casual English, will "get colder," we'll need to use another form. First let's take a look at a translated version of this sentence.

내일은 날씨가 더 추워질 거예요.

Everything about the sentence looks the same, except for just the way that the descriptive verb is conjugated.

So to say "to become" with a descriptive verb, here's the grammar form you'll need.

Descriptive Verb + 아/어/etc. + 지다

Take a descriptive verb, and conjugate it as if you were going to conjugate the 요 form. Then attach 지다, and conjugate it.

Here are some examples:

멀다 → 멀어지다

예쁘다 → 예뻐지다

강하다 → 강해지다

날씨가 더 좋아질 거예요.

"The weather will get better."

저는 내일부터 정말 바빠질 거예요.

"I will be(come) really busy from tomorrow."

영희가 많이 예뻐졌어요.

"Yung-hee got very pretty."

최근에 제 노트북이 조금 느려졌어요.

"Recently my laptop became a little slow."

Advanced Notes

Note that 지다 used after an *action verb* (instead of a descriptive verb) has a different meaning. This is why it's important to know whether a verb is a descriptive verb or an action verb when conjugating it. If you see what looks like an action verb with a 지다 ending, it's likely that this is *passive speech* – this is unrelated to the form of 지다 that we've just covered. We'll talk about passive speech in a later lesson.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 78: “Worth Doing”

Let’s talk about a simple grammar form that you can use to say that something is “worth doing” in Korean. Let’s first take a look at an example sentence in English.

“It’s worth going to Busan. It’s really fun.”

Saying that something is “worth” doing in English means that it’s *acceptable* to do it, and this is the same meaning with our form in Korean.

Action Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 만하다

To use it, take an *action verb stem*, and then attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*. Then attach 만하다 and conjugate it.

“It’s worth going to Busan. It’s really fun.”

부산은 갈 만해요. 정말 재미있어요.

Notice how although the English says “worth going to Busan,” the Korean sentence doesn’t use 에 after Busan. Instead it uses the Topic Marker (은/는), although you could also use the Subject Marker (이/가) depending on the meaning that you wanted in your sentence.

This is because the verb 만하다 is a *descriptive verb*. Remember that descriptive verbs *describe* things that are marked with the Topic Marker (은/는) or Subject Marker (이/가) – and not things that are marked with 에.

먹을 만해요?

“Is it worth eating?”

Also remember that since 만하다 means that something is *acceptable*, you could also translate this sentence as: “Does it taste okay?” (Or, “Does it taste acceptable?”)

그 영화가 정말 볼 만했어요.

“That movie was really worth seeing.”

이 책은 읽을 만한 거 같아요.

"I think this book is worth reading."

한국어는 공부할 만해요.

"Korean is worth studying."

This form also has one additional usage with *descriptive verbs*. When you use this form with a descriptive verb, it has a slightly different translation – "to be understandably" something, or "it's natural to be" something. Here's a quick example in English.

"It's natural to be tired right now."

Here's how to make this form.

Descriptive Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 만하다

First take a *descriptive verb stem*, and then attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*. Then attach the verb 만하다 and conjugate it like before.

Let's first translate our example sentence.

"It's natural to be tired right now."

지금 피곤할 만해요.

You could have also translated this sentence as "You're understandably tired right now."

Here are a few more examples of 만하다 with *descriptive verbs*.

배고플 만해요.

"It's understandable that you're hungry."

철수 씨는 의사라서 돈이 많이 있을 만해요.

"It's natural for Mr. Chul-soo to have a lot of money since he's a doctor."

저 집이 우리 집보다 더 **비쌌** 만해요.

"It's natural for that house to be more expensive than my house."

Advanced Notes

I should note that although the English translation of 만하다 changes based on whether it's being used with an action verb or a descriptive verb, the actual meaning of 만하다 in Korean is not changing.

For example, sometimes an action verb can also translate as "to be understandably" something, or "it's natural to be something."

그렇게 큰 거미를 봤으면 놀랄 만했네.

"It was understandable for you to be surprised after seeing such a large spider."

놀라다 is an action verb that means "to be surprised" or "to be startled."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 79: "Should Have"

There are a few different ways to express "should have" in Korean, and this lesson will cover *two* of the main ways.

But before starting this lesson, I should give a disclaimer that this lesson is intended for **intermediate** Korean learners, and might be confusing and/or less useful for beginning learners.

Let's get started with two examples in English.

"I also should have gone to the party."

"**You** also should have gone to the party."

In English, both of these sentences use the same grammar for "should have," but in Korean they will be slightly different. We'll need to learn two forms – one for speaking about *yourself* ("I" or "me") and one for speaking about *someone else* ("you").

[1st person] Action Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 겠 (그랬다)

[2nd person] Action Verb Stem + 지 그랬다

These two forms look similar, but one uses 겠 and the other uses 지. Also, both forms use 그랬다, which is the *past tense* conjugation of 그러다 (그렇게 [말]하다).

The form with 겠 might remind you of the form with 겠 that we learned in another lesson (Learn Korean Ep. 78: "Contrary to what you might think..."), but it has a different meaning here so I'd recommend keeping it separate in your notes.

Let's go over them one at a time.

[1st person] Action Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 겠 (그랬다)

This form is only used when you're speaking in the **1st person** – the 1st person means "I," or "me," so don't use this form when referring to someone else.

To make this form, take an action verb stem and attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*. Then attach 겠, and then *optionally* add the verb 그랬다 and conjugate it.

We can use this form to translate our first example sentence.

"I also should have gone to the party."
나도 파티에 갈 겠 그랬어.

Here are a few more example sentences.

어제 할 겠 그랬어.

"I should've done it yesterday."

더 일찍 잠을 잘 겠.

"I should've slept earlier."

그냥 기다릴 겠.

"I should've just waited."

이걸 먹지 말 겠 그랬나?

"Should I not have eaten this?"

When using a *negative sentence* with this form, use the form ~지 말다. This is the same form used when saying "don't." Using 안 먹을 겠 or 먹지 않을 겠 would be *incorrect*, although a Korean native would probably understand what you were trying to say. The same applies to our next form as well.

Now let's learn our 2nd form.

[2nd person] Action Verb Stem + 지 그랬다

This form is only used in the 2nd person – the 2nd person means “you,” so don’t use this form when referring to yourself.

To make it, take an action verb stem and attach 지. Then attach the verb 그랬다 and conjugate it like before.

Since this is only for speaking in the 2nd person, we can use this to translate the 2nd of our two example sentences.

“**You** also should have gone to the party.”

너도 파티에 가지 그랬어.

Here are a few more example sentences.

어제 숙제를 **하지** 그랬어.

“You should’ve done the homework yesterday.”

그냥 저녁을 **만들지** 그랬어.

“You should’ve just made dinner.”

내 말대로 우산을 **가져가지** 그랬어.

“You should’ve brought an umbrella like I told you.”

내 말대로 means “like/as I told you.”

그 여자한테 좋아한다고 **말하지** 그랬어.

“You should’ve told that girl that you like her.”

Advanced Notes

Let's take one more look at the first of these two forms. If this lesson is your first time being exposed to these two forms, I'd highly recommend ignoring these advanced notes until after you feel familiar with using them on your own.

[1st person] Action Verb Stem + (을/를) 걸 (그랬다)

This form can actually be used in both 1st person, and 2nd person examples. It is most commonly used in 1st person examples. However, there is a reason why I did not mention this in the bulk of the lesson – because there are many cases when using this form in the 2nd person can sound unnatural, even if it is grammatically correct.

But we can use this form to make our 2nd example sentence as well.

“You also should have gone to the party.”

너도 파티에 갈 걸 그랬어.

In addition, for this form, 그랬다 is only optional when used in the 1st person – it cannot be removed when using this form in the 2nd person.

Of course, Koreans will use both of these forms, so you'll need to know this information in order to understand people.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 80: “Approximately” and “About”

This lesson will cover how to make *approximations* in Korean – in simpler words, “guesses.” In English, we often make approximations by using the words “approximately” and “about.”

We’ll take a look at 3 of the most common ways to do this in Korean, using 정도, 쯤, and 약.

Noun (space) 정도

정도 means “about” or “approximately,” and you can use it by placing after a noun. Also remember to add a *space* between it and the word that it comes after.

Let’s take a look at an example.

3 미터 정도예요.

“It’s about 3 meters.”

Notice how in Korean, 정도 – which translates here as “about” – goes *after* what it is that you’re talking about. Using 정도 before instead of after would be *incorrect* and difficult to understand.

2 주일 정도 됐어요.

“It’s been about 2 weeks.”

Using an amount of time with the verb 되다 in the *past tense* is one way to say that an amount of time has passed, or that it has “been” an amount of time, such as in this example.

책상에 의자가 6 개 정도 있어요.

“There are about 6 chairs at the desk.”

Noun + 쯤

쯤 means the same thing as 정도, but is attached *directly* to the word it comes after, without a space.

2 시간쯤 잤어요.

"I slept about 2 hours."

한국에 2 달쯤 있었어요.

"I was in Korea for about 2 months."

식빵은 한 조각에 100 칼로리쯤이에요.

"It's about 100 calories for a piece of bread."

약 (space) Noun

약 also means "approximately," but is used in a different way from 정도 and 쯤. 약 is used *before* what you're talking about, and not after.

Also, 약 is more commonly used in *writing* than in speaking, but it's still okay to use it when speaking. It has a slightly more *textbook* feeling to it than 정도 and 쯤.

If this is your first time hearing about 정도 and 쯤, I'd recommend to use those first before using 약 until you feel more comfortable with the grammar.

Let's take a look at a few examples.

어제의 기온은 약 40 도였어요.

"Yesterday the temperature was approximately 40 degrees Celsius."

기온 means "(weather) temperature."

약 5 명이 왔어요.

"Approximately 5 people came."

가게에는 사과가 약 100 개 있어요.

"There are approximately 100 apples in the store."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 81: 모든 것 and 아무것도

In this lesson we'll learn about two important, common words – 모든 것 and 아무것도.

모든 것

모든 is an *adjective* that means "every" or "all."

것 is a *noun* that means "thing."

So literally, 모든 것 means "everything." It's straightforward to use.

모든 것이 좋아요.

"Everything is good."

You can use 모든 것 the same way you'd use any other noun.

모든 것이 맛있어요.

"Everything is delicious."

여기서 모든 것을 보고 싶어요.

"I want to see everything here."

And since I said that 모든 is an *adjective* that means "every" or "all," you can also use it separately if you want before other *nouns*.

모든 사람 → "everyone," or literally, "every person"

모든 생각 → "every idea" or "all ideas"

아무것도

아무 is an *adjective* that means "any."

것 means "thing."

도 means "even."

So literally, 아무것도 means "even anything." However, its usage is a bit different. 아무것도 is only used in *negative sentences*, meaning that it's only used in sentences which finish in a negative ending. Here's an example.

아무것도 안 먹었어요.

"I didn't eat anything."

안 먹다 is a *negative verb*, and means "to not eat."

However, if the sentence ended in simply 먹었어요 instead (아무것도 먹었어요), the sentence would no longer make sense grammatically and you could not use 아무것도.

Let's take a look at a few more examples.

아무것도 말하지 않았어요.

"I didn't say anything."

저도 **아무것도** 하지 않았어요.

"I didn't do anything either."

아무것도 못 봤어요.

"I couldn't see anything."

Advanced Notes

Since 아무 is an *adjective*, it can also be used with different nouns other than 것. It also does not need to be used in negative sentences – it can be used in both positive and negative sentences.

아무 색깔이나 상관없어요.

"It doesn't matter even if it's any color."

Also, 아무도 can be used by itself to mean "anyone" in negative sentences.

아무도 안 왔어요.

"Nobody came."

아무도 그렇게 생각하지 않아요.

"Nobody thinks that."

다 = "everything," "all"

Another common way to say everything is by using the *adverb* 다. Since it's an adverb, it's used directly before a verb. Depending on the sentence, it can translate as either "everything" or "all."

다 먹었어요.

"I ate everything."

"I ate it all."

다 했어요.

"I did everything."

"I did it all."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 82: "Planning to Do"

Let's learn two forms for saying that you're *planning* to do something.

Action Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 계획이다

To use it, take an *action verb stem* and attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*. Then attach 계획 ("plan"). Finally, attach the verb 이다 ("to be") and conjugate it.

Let's take a look at a few examples.

숙제를 할 계획이에요.

"I'm planning to do my homework."

내일 서울로 갈 계획이에요.

"I'm planning to go to Seoul tomorrow."

오늘 저녁에 초밥을 먹을 계획이에요.

"I'm planning to eat sushi tonight."

초밥 means "sushi."

일찍 은퇴할 계획이세요?

"Are you planning to retire early?"

은퇴하다 means "to retire."

But this form isn't the only way to say that you're planning to do something. Let's take a look at one more grammar form.

Action Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 예정이다

You can also use **예정** instead of **계획** to mean "planning to do." While **계획** means "plan," **예정** means "schedule," so using this form is more *formal* than using **계획**, although you'll see and hear them both used.

오늘 저녁을 같이 **먹을 예정입니다.**

"I'm planning to eat dinner together tonight."

주말에 **뭐할 예정이에요?**

"What are you planning to do on the weekend?"

2 시 전에 집에 **돌아갈 예정이에요.**

"I'm planning to return home before 2 o'clock."

돌아가다 means "to return" or "to go back."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 83: "Decide to Do"

In this lesson we'll cover how you can **decide** to do something in Korean. For example, let's first take a look at these two sentences.

"I went to the store."

"I decided to go to the store."

Since "went" is just the *past tense* of the verb "to go" in English, we can know that we'll use the verb 가다, "to go," to translate these sentences into Korean.

First, let's translate the sentence, "I went to the store."

저는 가게에 갔어요.

"I went to the store."

That was pretty simple. If we want to change the sentence to say, "I *decided* to go to the store," we'll need to switch the grammar a little bit.

Here's the grammar form that we're going to need.

Action Verb Stem + 기로 하다

Take an *action verb* (any verb that's an action, such as "to do," "to eat," or "to go") and get its *stem* by removing the 다 at the end. Then attach 기로. And finally, add the verb 하다 and conjugate it to the *past tense*.

Let's take a look at a few examples.

하다 ("to do") → 하기로 하다 ("to decide to do")

먹다 ("to eat") → 먹기로 하다 ("to decide to eat")

가다 ("to go") → 가기로 하다 ("to decide to go")

This form is straightforward to make. And already we can translate our example sentence.

저는 가게에 **가기로 했어요.**

"I decided to go to the store."

Notice how we made the verb at the end, 하다, into the *past tense*, 했어요, and *not* the verb 가다 ("to go"). When you're using this form, make sure you're simply taking the action verb's stem *as it is*, and not doing any conjugation to it first. Only conjugate the 하다 at the end. Commonly this will be 했어요 or 했습니다, among others.

Let's take a look at a few more examples.

오늘은 제가 설거지를 **하기로 했어요.**

"Today I decided to do the dishes."

설거지 means "dishwashing," and 설거지(를) 하다 means "to do the dishes."

새로운 티비를 **사기로 했어요.**

"I decided to buy a new TV."

공부하지 **않기로 했어요.**

"I decided not to study."

Remember that a *negative action verb* will still end with its usual negative form 지 않다 [pronounced "안타"], like in this example.

Alternatively, you could also use the 안 form when making a negative verb. So the above sentence could also look like this:

공부를 **안 하기로 했어요.**

"I decided not to study."

Action Verb Stem + 기로 결정하다

While the form 기로 하다 by itself already means "to decide to," if you'd like, *optionally* you can also change the 하다 at the end to the verb 결정하다, which means "to decide" or "to make a decision."

It'll have the *same meaning* whether you do this or not, but it's a more *direct* way of expressing that you're making a decision to do something. But just remember that it's optional.

소방관이 되기로 결정했어요.

"I decided to become a firefighter."

소방관 means "firefighter."

Advanced Notes

A common usage of this form 기로 (결정)하다 is with the *adverb* 원래.

원래 오늘 제가 학교에 가기로 했는데, 감기에 걸려서 못 갔어요.

"Originally I was going to go to school today, but I caught a cold and couldn't go."

Not only can you change the 하다 in 기로 하다 to the verb 결정하다, but you could also change it to other verbs as well.

Here are a few examples of other forms that this grammar can have:

기로 하다 – "to decide to do"

기로 결정하다 – "to decide to do," "to make a decision to do"

기로 약속하다 – "to promise to do," "to make a promise to do"

기로 결심하다 – "to be determined to do," "to resolve to do"

오늘 술을 끊기로 약속했어요.

"Today I decided to quit alcohol."

These other forms work in the same way, and you'll hear more as you learn. Know that they all come from this same form, 기로 하다, and when you hear a new one, you should be able to recognize it. As long as you know the verb that is attached after 기로, you should also be able to understand what the grammar form means.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 84: "I guess..."

In this lesson we'll discuss how to say "I guess that" or "it seems like" in Korean. While these two forms in English have slightly different meanings and usages, in Korean they'll use the same form.

However, we will need to learn 2 forms in this lesson. Why two forms? Because you'll use a different form whether you're using an *action verb* or a *descriptive verb*.

First let's take a look at an example sentence in English. Focus on the English sentence for now, and we'll take a look at how to conjugate it soon.

잘 모르나 봐요.

"I guess that he doesn't know it well."

"It seems like he doesn't know it well."

Either of these English translations are fine. Depending on what sounds best in English, you can either translate this form as "I guess that" or "it seems like" or even "it looks like."

So here's how to make our first of two forms.

Action Verb Stem + 나 보다

Take an action verb stem, and attach 나. Then conjugate the verb 보다 ("to see").

In our example sentence, we used the verb 모르다, which is an action verb.

Here are a few more examples of this form with action verbs.

옆 집에서 삼겹살을 먹나 봐요.

"I guess they're eating sam-gyup-sal next door."

"It seems like they're eating sam-gyup-sal next door."

벌써 불꽃놀이를 시작하려나 봐요.

“I guess they’re going to start the fireworks already.”

Here, the 려나 part is a shortened form of 려고 하나. The full version would be 벌써 불꽃놀이를 시작하려고 하나 봐요. Commonly when using the 려고 하다 form, the 고 and 하 are removed to keep things shorter.

나갔나 봐요.

“I guess he left.”

Note that the end verb, 보다 will stay in the *present tense*, even if your sentence is in past tense. So if you want to add a tense to your sentence, add it at the verb stem itself.

재미있나 봐요.

“I guess it’s entertaining.”

“It seems entertaining.”

Although the verb 재미있다 is often used to describe things, remember that the verb 있다 conjugates as an action verb, so you’ll use this form with it.

So now we know how we can say “I think that” or “it seems like” using an action verb. But what if we want to say this about a *descriptive verb*? For example, how could we make this sentence?

“I guess the weather is really hot today.”

“It seems like the weather is really hot today.”

We couldn’t use the previous form, since the verb “to be hot,” 덥다, is a *descriptive verb*. So we’re going to need to learn one more form that we can use with descriptive verbs.

Here’s that form.

Descriptive Verb Stem + (ㄴ/은)가 보다

To make it, take a descriptive verb stem and attach either a ㄴ if it ends in a *vowel*, or 은 if it ends in a *consonant*. Then attach 가, and finally conjugate the verb 보다 like before.

So now we can translate our previous examples.

오늘 날씨가 아주 더운가 봐요.

"I guess the weather is really hot today."

"It seems like the weather is really hot today."

Remember that certain verbs, such as ones that end in a ㅁ (for example, 덥다), have their own rules for conjugation. For example, using 덥다 with this form would become 더운가 보다, since the verb 덥다 has a verb stem that ends in a ㅁ.

Here are a few more examples.

아주 좋은가 봐요.

"I guess it's really good."

"It seems like it's really good."

심심한가 보네요.

"It seems like you're bored."

배가 안 고프는가 봐요?

"I guess you're not hungry?"

철수는 숙제가 너무 많은가 봐.

"I guess Chul-soo has too much homework."

한국 사람인가 봐요.

"I guess he's a Korean."

Advanced Notes

While **나 보다** is used for action verbs, and **(ㄴ/은)가 보다** for descriptive verbs, there is a common exception to the rules.

나 보다 can also be used with descriptive verbs too (not only action verbs), if the descriptive verb stem ends in a *consonant*.

Here are a couple of examples:

작다 → 작은가 보다 or 작나 보다

덥다 → 더운가 보다 or 덥나 보다

However, you cannot use **(ㄴ/은)가 보다** with action verbs.

Conclusion

Just remember that the meaning of both of these two grammar forms is the same, and the one that you use depends only on the type of verb that you're working with.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 85: Common Korean Contractions

Korean contractions are simple shorter ways of writing grammar and words. There are many of them, and they're common enough that you should learn them.

Note that all of these are optional, but commonly used. Don't feel like you *have* to use them, but be able to understand and recognize them when they come up.

Most of these are fine for beginners to learn, but I'd recommend skipping any of them for which you haven't already learned their basic forms.

Let's get started with a few of the most common contractions in Korean.

저는 → 전

나는 → 난

너는 → 넌

These three might be some of the most commonly found. 저는 becomes 전, 나는 becomes 난, and 너는 becomes 넌. When you're working with the Topic Marker (은/는), sometimes it becomes just a ㄴ if the word it comes after ends in a vowel. Since 저, 나, and 너 all end with a vowel, it became popular to use them in this way. Remember that this is only when you're using these words with the *Topic Marker*.

에는 → 엔

This is a combination of the *Location Marker*, 에, with the *Topic Marker* to become 엔. This contraction is a bit more casual though, so I wouldn't recommend using this one in any formal situation.

저를 → 절

나를 → 날

너를 → 널

Just like with the Topic Marker, when the *Object Marker* comes after a vowel, it's sometimes shortened to just a ㄹ. So in this case, 저를 becomes 절, 나를 becomes 날, and 너를 becomes 널.

뭐를 → 뭘

뭐, "what," can shorten to 뭘 when it's used with the *Object Marker*.

것을 → 걸

것이 → 게

것은 → 건

These three contractions with 것 are also very common.

것, "thing," becomes 걸 when used with the *Object Marker* (을/를).

것 becomes 게 when used with the *Subject Marker* (이/가).

것 becomes 건 when used with the *Topic Marker* (은/는).

것 → 거

것 can sometimes be shortened to 거, but not in every case. Here are a few examples.

이것 → 거

그것 → 그거

저것 → 저거

But 것 can't always shorten to 거. Here are two examples where it can't.

것도 → 것도

것만 → 것만

These two forms will stay the same. I'd only recommend learning 이거, 그거, and 저거 for the time being.

저에게 → 제게

나에게 → 내게

너에게 → 네게

저에게 can become 제게, 나에게 can become 내게, and 너에게 can become 네게.

내게 and 네게 sound very similar, but when used in context a Korean will be able to know which one you mean.

More Intermediate Contractions

From here on in the video, this lesson will get slightly more intermediate, so if you haven't yet learned one of these original forms, feel free to skip over it for now and learn it later.

이 아이 "this guy/gal" → 애

그 아이 "that guy/gal" → 개

저 아이 "that guy/gal" → 재

These three words are *casual*, so they shouldn't be used in any situation where you want to sound polite, or they'd come across as rude. But they're fairly common.

You can use 애 to mean "this person," and 개 or 재 to mean "that person." What you're really saying is "this kid" or "that kid," so it's a common slang way to refer to other people.

다고 해(요) → 대(요)

냐고 해(요) → 내(요)

자고 해(요) → 재(요)

라고 해(요) → 래(요)

These forms are commonly used when you're quoting people, or yourself. The first form, **다고** is the form you'd use when making *statements*, **냐고** for *questions*, **자고** for *suggestions*, and **라고** for *commands*. **라고** is also used when making quoted *statements* with the verb 이다.

빨리 오**라고** 했어! → 빨리 오**랬어!**

"I said to come here quickly!"

하게 → 케

하지 → 치

하고 → 코

Note that these *only* apply when you're using the verb 하다. A verb ending in 하게 can be shortened to 케, 하지 to 치, and 하고 to 코.

그걸 원**치**도 않아.

"I don't even want that."

The full version of this would be, 그것을 원**하지**도 않아.

Advanced Notes

Here are some additional notes on more contractions in Korean.

The form (으)려고 하다 can also be shortened to simply (으)려다. This is then conjugated in a sentence depending on the form being used. Here are a few example forms.

(으)려고 하면 → (으)려면

(으)려고 하고 → (으)려고

(으)려고 하는데 → (으)려는데

The form **다고**, **냐고**, **자고**, and **라고** can also be shortened further depending on the grammar used after them. Here are a few example forms.

다고 하는데 → 다는데

다고 한다 → 단다

다고 합니다 → 답니다

다고 하는데 → 다는데

Conclusion

But be careful not to overuse any of these contractions. Although they're commonly seen, using a lot of contractions in a sentence can sound like you're speaking too casually. So be extra careful to avoid them when you're in a situation where you need to be polite.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 86: "Instead Of"

In this lesson we'll learn about a useful grammar form that you can use. This form is simple to use, and there are two different forms depending on how you're using it.

Let's first take a look at an example sentence in English.

"I watched a drama **instead of** a movie."

Here's the form we'll need to know to translate this sentence:

Noun + 대신에

To use it, take a *noun*, and attach 대신, followed by 에. Then finish the rest of the sentence.

Already we can translate our example sentence.

저는 영화 **대신에** 드라마를 봤어요.

"I watched a drama instead of a movie."

Notice how in English, "drama" comes *before* "movie" in the sentence, but in Korean it's the other way around – 영화 대신에, "instead of a movie." Remember that 대신에 is used *after* what it is that's "instead of," and not before.

Here are a few more examples.

그거 **대신에** 이거 하세요.

"Do this instead of that."

사과 **대신에** 오렌지를 먹었어요.

"I ate an orange instead of an apple."

저 **대신에** 해 주세요.

"Please do it instead of me."

치마 **대신에** 바지를 샀어요.

"I bought pants instead of a skirt."

But nouns aren't the only way that you can use this form. There are also cases where you'll want to use this form with *verbs* too. Let's take a look at an example of what I mean.

"I watched a drama **instead of going** to see a movie."

This example uses a verb, "instead of going," so we're going to need to use a different form for this. Fortunately, the form that we'll use isn't that different from our first one.

Let's take a look at how we can do this.

Action Verb Stem + 는 대신에

Take an *action verb stem* (an action verb, with the 다 at the end removed), and attach 는. Then add 대신에, and finish the rest of the sentence just like before.

So let's translate our example sentence.

저는 영화를 보러 **가는 대신에** 드라마를 봤어요.

"I watched a drama instead of going to see a movie."

Here are a few more examples.

뭘 **먹는 대신에** 물을 마셔요.

"Drink water instead of eating something."

For a review of how to use 뭐 to mean "something," check out my video "[Learn Korean Ep. 48: Something, Somewhere, and Someone.](#)"

도서관으로 **가는 대신에** 친구들이랑 놀러 갔어요.

"I went to play with friends instead of going to the library."

잠을 자는 대신에 저를 도와주세요.

"Help me instead of sleeping."

컴퓨터 게임을 하는 대신에 한국어를 공부하세요.

"Study Korean instead of playing games."

Advanced Notes

Another common translation of this form is "in exchange for," or "in return for."

If you're translating a sentence and notice that it sounds odd in English, or if the meaning does not match the situation that you are in, try using one of these translations instead. Here's an example.

제가 숙제를 도와주는 대신에 밥을 사 주세요.

"**In exchange for** me helping you (with your) homework, buy me some food."

"**In return for** me helping you (with your) homework, buy me some food."

Another note: the **에** at the end of this form is *optional*. However, it's commonly added, so I'd recommend using it, especially if this is your first time learning about this form.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 87: “No matter how much”

This lesson will cover how to say “no matter” and “no matter how much.” For example, “No matter how busy you are, you need to do the homework.” This lesson is intended for intermediate learners, and might be a bit difficult for beginners.

아무리 Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. + 도

This form uses the adverb **아무리**, meaning “no matter.” Attach a verb after, and conjugate it to the **요** form (without the **요**). Then attach **도** (“also,” “even,” “too”). Literally, together this means “no matter even if (verb).” Here’s a quick example using the verb **바쁘다** (“to be busy”).

아무리 바빠도...

“No matter how busy you are...”

Here are a few example sentences with this form.

아무리 그 남자가 좋아도 만나지 마세요.

“No matter how much you like that boy, don’t meet him.”

아무리 피곤해도 자면 안 돼요.

No matter how tired you are, you shouldn’t sleep.

아무리 봐도 오타를 찾을 수 없어요.

No matter how much I look, I can’t find a typo.

아무리 먹어도 배가 안 불러요.

No matter how much I eat, I’m not full.

아무리 어른이라도 아이스크림은 맛있어요.

No matter how much of an adult you are, ice cream is delicious.

When you use this form with the verb 이다 ("to be") it becomes 이라도 after a *consonant*, or 라도 after a *vowel*.

Advanced Notes

You might also see the word 아무래도. This word is a combination of 아무리 and 해도 (from the verb 하다). Literally, 아무래도 means "No matter (how much you do it)," but a more natural translation is "anyway" or "either way."

If you use 아무래도, place it at the *beginning* of a sentence.

This form is also commonly used together with the 것 같다 form ("it seems...," "I think..."). Here are a few examples.

아무래도 철수가 안 올 거 같아.
"Anyway I don't think Chul-soo will come."

아무래도 내가 실수한 거 같아.
"Either way I think I made a mistake."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 88: "Try to..." and "Intend to..."

This lesson will cover how to say "try to" or "intend to." For example, "Yesterday I tried to study." There are two forms that we'll need to cover.

Action Verb Stem + (으)려고 하다

To say that you "intend to" do something, take an action verb stem and attach 으려고 if it ends in a *consonant*, or 려고 if it ends in a *vowel*. Adding 하다 and conjugating it at the end is *optional*, but I'd recommend using it if this is your first time seeing this form.

This form literally means "intend to," but we can use it to mean "try to" as well. Here's an example.

다이어트를 하려고 했어요.

"I tried to diet."

"I intended to diet."

Since the verb 하다 at the end is optional, we could also write this sentence like this:

다이어트를 하려고요.

"I'm trying to diet."

"I'm intending to diet."

Note that if you don't use the verb 하다, you can't change the tense of the sentence (like in the first example). If you want to say that you *are* trying to diet, it's fine to not add 하다. But if you want to say that you *tried* to diet (past tense) then you'll need to add it.

Here are a few more example sentences.

자려고 하고 있어요.

"I am trying to sleep."

"I am intending to sleep."

내일 친구를 만나려고 해요.

"Tomorrow I intend to meet a friend."

"Tomorrow I'll try to meet a friend."

지금 학교로 가려고 해요.

"Now I'm intending to go to school."

"Now I'm trying to go school."

But saying that you're *intending* to go to school doesn't sound very natural. It also wouldn't sound natural even if we translated it to *trying* to go. This is because this form has one more usage – it can also translate as "going to." For example, "Now I'm going to go to school." Here are a few more examples.

숙제를 하려고 해요.

"I'm intending to do the homework."

"I'm trying to do the homework."

"I'm going to do the homework."

This form can translate as "going to," because in English saying that you're "going to" means that you're "intending to" do something.

However, note that this form is not the same as using the normal future tense. If you use the future tense, it does not mean that you are intending to do something. Instead, the future tense simply means that you *will* do something. Here's an example.

숙제를 할 거예요.

"I will do the homework."

If you're not sure whether to use this form, or the future tense, I'd recommend that you use the future tense. If what you want to say is that you *will* do something, you'll always be grammatically correct to use the future tense. As you become more used to using this form, you can start using it more often in your sentences.

Whether this form translates as "intending to" or "trying to" or "going to" will be clear from the context of the sentence.

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 보다

This form can be used to say "try to," but *not* "intend to." This is a simpler grammar form that can be used to show that you're *attempting* to do something.

To use it, take an action verb stem and conjugate it to the 요 form (without adding the 요). Then attach the verb 보다 ("to see") and conjugate it. This form literally means that you are *doing* a verb, and then *seeing* how it goes. This form can more naturally translate as "to try to do." Here is a quick example.

한국어를 공부해 봤어요.
"I tried to learn Korean."

The above sentence could more literally translate as, "I learned Korean and saw how it went." Here are a few more examples.

먹어 봐!
"Try (eating) it!"

그 셔츠를 입어 보고 싶어요.
"I want to try wearing that shirt."

More naturally, we can also translate the above sentence as "I want to try on that shirt."

생각해 볼게요.
"I'll try thinking about it."

More naturally, we can also translate the above sentence as "I'll think about it and see how it goes."

사장님을 만나 보고 싶지 않아요.
"I don't want to try meeting the boss."

Advanced Notes

More about (으)려고 하다

We learned that 하다 is optional in the (으)려고 하다 form. However, it can also be replaced with other verbs. The form (으)려고 by itself is what shows intention, and the 하다 is simply there to give the form a *tense*. Because of this, there are many other verbs that we can use instead of 하다. Here are two examples.

요즘 다이어트하려고 등산을 하고 있어요.
"I'm hiking (intending) to diet these days."
"I'm trying to diet these days by hiking."

여행을 가려고 돈을 모으고 있어요.
"I'm saving up money (intending) to go on a trip."

Note on (으)래요

Previously we learned about the (으)래(요) form, to say that we "wanna" do something, or for asking someone else if they "wanna" do something. This form is similar in usage to the (으)려고 하다 form. Both forms can be used to show intention. You can think of the (으)래(요) form as a combination of the (으)려고 하다 form and the meaning "want to."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 89: 주세요

This episode will teach the most basic way to ask for things in Korean.

Noun + (을/를) 주세요

The most basic phrase that you can use to ask for something in Korean is 주세요.

To use it, take a noun (what it is that you're asking for), and attach the Object Marker. The Object Marker will be 을 after a *consonant*, or 를 after a *vowel*. Then use 주세요.

주세요 literally means "Give me...," but it's a *polite* command and can more naturally translate as "Please give me...."

In English, when we ask for things we might commonly use sentences like this:

"Could you get me some..."

"Can I have..."

"Could I get..."

"Could you pass me the..."

... and more.

In Korean, none of that is necessary. Instead, using 주세요 is perfectly acceptable in most situations.

For example, if you're at a restaurant and want to see a menu, you can say 메뉴를 주세요 ("Please give me a menu."). You don't need to say "Do you think that I could please get one of the menus?" or anything long like that in Korean. Or if you need water, you can say 물을 주세요 ("Please give me some water."). You don't need to ask "Could I please get a glass of water?"

더 - "more"

You can use 더 together with 주세요 to mean "Please give me more...."

물을 더 주세요.

"Please give me more water."

많이 - "a lot"

You can use 많이 in the same way to mean that you want "a lot" of something.

김치를 많이 주세요.

"Please give me a lot of kimchi."

조금 - "a little"

Or you can use 조금 to ask for "a little" of something.

밥을 조금 주세요.

"Please give me a little (bit of) rice."

조금 더 - "a little more"

You can combine 조금 and 더 to ask for "a little more" of something.

고기를 조금 더 주세요.

"Please give me a little (bit) more meat."

However, you can't combine 많이 with 더 – 많이 더 is incorrect. Instead, simply use 많이 ("a lot") or 더 ("more") on its own.

Advanced Notes

You can use 주세요 anywhere in public (such as in a restaurant), but you'll want a more casual way to ask for things between *friends*.

Noun + (을/를) 줘(요)

You can use the same form, but using 줘(요) instead of 주세요. Use 줘요 when talking to a friend who's older than you, and use 줘 when talking to a friend who's younger than you or the same age as you.

빨리 돈 줘.

"Quick, give me the money."

Noun + (을/를) 주실 수 있으세요?

If you'd like an extra polite way of asking for something, you can use this form in the same way. This form is longer, and literally means "Are you able to give me...?" It's much more polite, so you won't need it as often, but it can be useful in a *formal* setting. For example, you can use this form to ask a special favor from someone.

더 많이

Although you can't combine 많이 with 더 to become 더 많이, you *can* combine it the other way around. 더 많이 can be used to mean "a lot more."

더 많이 주세요!

"Please give me a lot more!"

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 90: Compared to...

This lesson will cover how to make comparisons. For example, we'll learn how to make the sentence "Taking a bus is cheap **compared to** taking a train." This lesson is intended for intermediate learners, and might be a bit difficult for beginners.

Noun + 에 비해(서)

To say "compared to," first take a noun and attach the particle 에. Then add 비해(서). The 서 here is *optional*. Here's a quick example.

학교에 비해서...
Compared to school...

Note that the noun you are comparing something to will come *before* this form, and not after like in English. Here is an example sentence.

버스를 타는 것은 기차를 타는 것에 비해서 싸요.
"Taking a bus is cheap compared to taking a train."

Let's take the sentence apart and look at each piece. First we have 버스를 타는 것 ("taking a bus"), followed by the Topic Marker, and then 기차를 타는 것 ("taking a train"). After that we have 비해(서), which here means "compared to (taking a train)." Then we have the final part, 싸요, from the verb 싸다 ("to be cheap"). If we put the pieces together, we get the literal meaning of "As for taking a bus, it is cheap, compared to taking a train." Here are a few more example sentences.

이 가방이 그 가방에 비해서 무거워요.
"This bag is heavy compared to that bag."

고기가 지난번에 비해서 더 맛있어요.
"The meat is more delicious compared to last time."

형에 비해서 저는 돈을 더 잘 써요.

"I use money better than (compared to) my older brother."

Advanced Notes

The form **비해(서)** originally comes from the verb **비하다** ("to compare.") **비하다** is not used on its own to mean "to compare," and is only used in certain grammatical forms such as this one. Instead, if you want to say "to compare" normally, use the verb **비교(를) 하다** ("to compare," "to make a comparison").

Noun + 에 비하면

Another use of this form is **비하면** ("if one compares"), which is used in the same way as **비해(서)**. This form is much less common. Here's an example.

옛날에 비하면 많이 나아진 거예요.

"It got a lot better, if you compare it to the past."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 91: Changing Action Verbs to Adjectives (Part 1 of 2)

We've already covered in previous lessons how to conjugate adjectives and action verbs. For example, we can say "That person is good" by conjugating the verb 좋다 ("to be good") into 그 사람이 좋아요. We can also conjugate it before a noun as 좋은 and get 좋은 사람이에요 ("He is a good person.").

We've also covered how to conjugate action verbs. For example, we can conjugate the action verb 먹다 ("to eat") and get 저는 피자를 먹어요 ("I eat pizza.").

But these forms alone don't allow us to create more complicated sentences, and we'll need to learn a new form in order to say things like "I made a food *that* he likes," or "I want to meet someone *who* speaks Korean." To make these types of sentences, we'll need to know how to change an action verb into an adjective, so we can use it before a noun.

First, here's an example of what we'll be making, using the action verb 좋아하다 ("to like"):

철수는 제가 좋아하는 피자를 만들었어요.

"Chul-soo made a pizza that I like."

Let's learn how to change action verbs into adjectives. Each tense works a bit differently.

Present Tense: Action Verb Stem + 는

For the present tense, take an action verb stem and attach 는. Here are a few examples.

하다 → 하는

먹다 → 먹는

가다 → 가는

놀다 → 노는*

* In present, past, and future tenses, verb stems ending in ㄹ will drop the ㄹ when conjugating this form. This is common with grammar forms that use ㄴ or ㄹ.

피자를 먹는 고양이를 봤어요.

"I saw a cat that eats pizza."

한국어를 잘하는 사람을 만나 보고 싶어요.

"I want to meet someone who speaks Korean well."

여기서 제가 아는 사람이 없어요.

"There is nobody who I know here."

Although the word "nobody" doesn't appear in the Korean sentence, a more literal translation would be "There is no *person* who I know."

그 사람이 좋아하는 음식을 만들었어요.

"I made food that he likes."

Past Tense: Action Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ

For the past tense, take an action verb stem and attach 은 if it ends in a *consonant*, or ㄴ if it ends in a *vowel*. Here are a few examples:

먹다 → 먹은

하다 → 한

쓰다 → 쓴

제가 쓴 책이 아주 좋아요.

"The book that I wrote is very good."

집에 일찍 간 사람이 없었어요.

"There was nobody who went home early."

제 친구가 준 과자가 맛있었어요.

"The snacks my friend gave me were delicious."

2 시간 동안 공부한 학생이 누구였어요?

"Who was the student who studied for 2 hours?"

Future Tense: Action Verb Stem + 을/ㄹ

For the future tense, take an action verb stem and attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*. Here are a few examples:

먹다 → 먹을

하다 → 할

믿다 → 믿을

오늘 공부할 사람이 없어요.

"There is nobody who will study today."

같이 갈 사람을 찾고 있어요.

"I'm looking for someone who will go together (with me)."

이건 제가 살 컴퓨터예요.

"This is the computer that I will buy."

부모님에게 받을 선물이 있어요.

"There is a present that I will get from my parents."

Advanced Notes

When making sentences that use this grammar ("that" or "who" in English), you'll most commonly find the *Subject Marker* (이/가) used to mark the person who is doing the action verb – *not* the *Topic Marker* (은/는).

In our first example, we had 철수는 제가 좋아하는 피자를 만들었어요. ("Chul-soo made a pizza that I like."). It would be awkward to use 저는 in the sentence instead of 제가. Using the Subject Marker shows that here, "I" (제가) am the person who likes the pizza.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 92: Changing Action Verbs to Adjectives (Part 2 of 2)

This lesson will continue from the previous episode (#92). Review that episode first before beginning this one.

We learned how we can conjugate action verbs in the past, present, and future tenses to use as adjectives. Using these same three forms, and the noun 것 ("thing"), we can get a few additional uses.

Let's look at each form one at a time.

Something one does... Action Verb Stem + 는 것

With the present tense, we can attach 것 to mean "something that one does" or "something that you do." For example:

피자는 먹는 거예요.

"Pizza is something that you eat."

책은 읽는* 거예요.

"A book is something that you read."

* This will be pronounced as "읽는" due to sound change rules.

그 사람이 하는 게 뭐예요?

"What is it that he does?"

숙제는 그냥 하는 거죠.

"Homework is just something you do."

Something one did... Action Verb Stem + ㄴ/은 것

With the past tense of a verb, we can attach **것** to mean "something one did." For example:

제가 한 것이 아니에요.

"I didn't do it."

Or more literally, this sentence could translate as "It's not something that I did."

제가 한 거예요.

"I did it."

Or literally, we can translate this as "It's something that I did."

누가 만든 거예요?

"Who made it?"

Or more literally, "It's something that who made?"

제가 먹은 것은 뭐였어요?

"What was it that I ate?"

Something to... **Action Verb Stem + **ㄹ/을** 것**

With the future tense of a verb, we can attach **것** to mean "something to (verb)." For example:

할 게 없어요.

"There is nothing to do."

먹을 것을 찾고 있어요.

"I am looking for something to eat."

볼 게 없어요.

"There is nothing to see."

읽을 것이 없어요.

"There is nothing to read."

Or more literally, "There is not a thing to read."

Advanced Notes

The future tense form can also be used with other nouns besides 것. When used with other nouns, its meaning becomes "(noun) to (verb)." This is a very common, standard grammatical construction. Here are just a few common examples:

준비할 시간이 없어요.

"There's no time to prepare."

잘 시간이에요.

"It's time to sleep"

도와줄 사람이 있어요?

"Is there someone who will help?"

읽을 책이 많아요.

"There are many books to read."

The forms with 것 are the same construction.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 93: Korean Honorifics (Part 1 of 2)

"Honorifics" is only one part of Korean *politeness levels*. In order to understand honorifics, we'll first need to understand how and when to use the regular ~요 form, the ~니다 form, as well as know about 반말 (casual Korean). These forms are all covered in other episodes in this series, so I won't re-teach them here. Make sure to know all of those forms well before beginning this lesson.

The ~요 form and ~니다 form are used to show respect to the person who you're speaking to. However, the person you're speaking to isn't always the same person who you're talking about. For example, you could be speaking with your best friend (using 반말), and talking about his or her father. In this case, it would be good to show extra respect toward the father, but not toward your best friend.

Honorific speech is used to show respect to someone who you are speaking *about*, but not specifically to show respect to the person you're talking to. Here's an example sentence.

아버지가 어디에 있어요?

"Where's dad?"

This sentence uses the ~요 form, so the speaker is likely talking with someone who they want to show respect to. But the ~요 form by itself doesn't show any respect to the person who you're talking *about*. While this sentence is grammatically correct, it does not show any extra respect to the father. 있다 ("to exist") is a regular verb, that here is referring to the father, and does not show any extra respect.

Instead of 있다 ("to exist"), we can use a different verb that will show more respect toward the subject of that verb. In this case, we can use the honorific verb 계시다 ("to exist") instead to add extra respect toward the father. We'll show this example in a moment.

To repeat, honorific speech does not change the amount of respect to the person we are speaking with, but only to the person who we are talking about (unless the person we are talking about is the same person we are speaking to).

Here's how we can change the previous sentence to use honorific speech, to show extra respect to the father.

아버지가 어디에 계세요?

"Where's dad?"

Using 계세요 (from 계시다) shows extra respect toward the dad, but not toward the person we're speaking to. In fact, we can change the sentence to 반말 and still use the verb 계시다.

아버지가 어디에 계셔?

"Where's dad?"

This sentence could be said to a close friend or sibling, and still shows extra respect to the father.

This is the basics of how honorific speech works. It shows respect to the person who you are speaking *about*. For example, this might be a *teacher*, an *adult*, a *stranger*, and anyone who you have a *business* relationship with. The usage situations are similar to when you would normally use the ~니다 form.

You will not use honorific when talking about close friends, boyfriends or girlfriends, small children, or animals.

Asking Questions with Honorifics

Often, the person who you are talking about is also the same person who you are talking to. This happens whenever you're asking a question to someone about themselves. For example, you might ask a stranger how to get to the bank.

은행에 어떻게 가는지 아세요?

"Do you know how to go to the bank?"

아세요 comes from the honorific verb 아시다 (“to know”), which comes from the regular verb 알다 (“to know”). We’ll talk about how to make honorific verbs soon.

Of course, we could have also conjugated the sentence this way, and it would be grammatically correct:

은행에 어떻게 가는지 알아요?
“Do you know how to go to the bank?”

But using 알다 instead of 아시다 doesn’t show any extra respect to the person we’re talking about (here, the listener). Since this question would likely be asked to a stranger, it would be better to use honorifics.

Let’s talk about how to change a regular verb into an honorific verb.

Verb Stem + (으)시다

Take a verb stem and attach 으시다 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach 시다 if it ends in a *vowel*. Verb stems ending in ㄹ will drop the ㄹ.

This will become ~(으)세요 in the 요 form, ~십니다 in the ~니다 form, or ~셔 in casual speech, among many other ways. Here are a few various examples:

하다 → 하세요, 하십니다, 하셔, 하시면
 믿다 → 믿으세요, 믿으십니다, 믿으시고, 믿으셨어요
 이다 → 이세요, 이십니다, 이시죠, 이셨는데

Before we go on, let’s talk about using this form as ~(으)세요.

Verb Stem + (으)세요

The ~요 form has many uses. One of its uses is for making *polite commands* – we can do the same with ~(으)세요.

You can use the ~(으)세요 form to make regular statements, questions, and to give commands that sound polite. This is similar to using the word "please" in English when asking for something. Here are some examples:

주세요.

"Please give (it to) me."

하세요.

"Please do (it)."

가세요.

"Please go."

Remember that the ~요 form, and by extension the ~(으)세요 form, can also be used in statements and questions. Here's an example of a sentence with various politeness levels:

선생님이 뭐해?

선생님이 뭐해요?

선생님이 뭐하셔?

선생님이 뭐하세요?

선생님이 뭐하십니까?

"What is the teacher doing?"

Unique Honorific Verbs

Not all verbs use the ~(으)시다 form to become honorific (such as 계시다). Here are the most common ones:

있다 → 계시다 "to exist"

없다 → 안 계시다 "to not exist"

먹다 → 드시다 "to eat"

자다 → 주무시다 "to sleep"

죽다 → 돌아가시다 "to die" (literally, "to go back")

Here are some examples:

어머니는 지금 집에 안 계세요.
"Mom is not at home now."

선생님은 이미 점심을 드셨어요.
"The teacher ate lunch already."

Note that if a verb has its own honorific verb form, you have to use it. So using 먹으시다 would be incorrect.

잘 주무셨어요?
"Did you sleep well?"

할아버지가 돌아가셨습니다.
"My grandfather passed away."

Honorific Nouns

Not only do we need to use honorific verbs when we're using honorific speech, we also need to use honorific nouns. Here's an example:

사람 → 분 "person"

Both 사람 and 분 mean "person," but 분 is used to show extra respect to that "person" who you're talking about.

So if you want to say that a teacher is a good person, you could say this:

선생님이 좋은 분이세요.
"The teacher is a good person."

This sentence uses an honorific verb, 이다, here as 이세요, and the honorific noun 분. We could also say this sentence:

선생님이 좋은 사람이에요.
"The teacher is a good person."

This sentence is grammatically correct, but it doesn't show any extra respect to the teacher.

Here are the most commonly used honorific nouns:

사람 → 분 "person"
집 → 댁 "house"
나이 → 연세 "age"
이름 → 성함

Examples

Let's look at a few examples using everything that we've covered.

선생님의 댁이 어디세요?
"Where is the teacher's house?"

Since 이세요 here comes after a vowel, it shortens to 세요.

아빠가 많이 드셨어.
"My dad ate a lot."

연세가 어떻게 되세요?
"How old are you?"

저 분이 누구세요?
"Who is that person?"

Advanced Notes

있으시다 and 없으시다

You might see either of these verbs used instead of 계시다 and 안 계시다. Using these verbs to show extra respect to a person would be *incorrect*. However, it is acceptable to use these verbs when referring to a *thing* (and not a person). For example:

숙제가 있으세요?

"Is there any homework?"

Using the verbs this way shows extra respect to the person you're talking about – in this case, the person you're speaking with (the teacher, most likely). These verbs can only be used in this way when speaking directly to the person who you're talking about. In these cases, using 계시다 would be *incorrect* – for example, 숙제가 계세요 is grammatically wrong.

The same applies to the verb 이다 ("to be"). It can be used in the same way, as 이시다. For example:

5 백원이세요.

"That's 500 Won."

Honorific Progressive Tense

When using honorifics with the progressive tense (~고 있다), change both the verb before to an honorific, and also change 있다 to 계시다. For example:

할머니가 주무시고 계세요.

"Grandmother is sleeping."

However, if the first verb does not have its own unique honorific verb (such as 가다 which becomes 가시다), then it's not necessary to change it. For example:

아버지는 어디에 가고 계세요?

"Where is dad going?"

It's not necessary to use 가시고 (from 가시다) because 가다 does not have a unique honorific verb form, and 가고 is preferable.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 94: Korean Honorifics (Part 2 of 2)

Last episode we learned about honorific speech, honorific verbs, making commands with the ~(으)세요 form, and honorific nouns. This lesson will continue from where we left off.

Humble speech is similar to honorific speech, in that it can be combined with other forms, and is used to show a certain level of respect to the person you are speaking *about*.

However, while honorific speech is used to show extra respect to a person we're talking about, humble speech is a bit different. Humble speech is used to show *humility*. This is figuratively as if the speaker is lowering himself or herself down to the person he or she is speaking about.

드리다 "to give"

Let's first take a look at an example sentence:

내일 선물을 줄 거예요.

"I will give you a present tomorrow."

This sentence is grammatically fine. However, what if the person we're giving the present to (the person we're talking about – here, "you" in the sentence) is someone who we'd want to show extra respect to?

We can't use the honorific verb 주시다 ("to give"), because that would be adding extra respect to *ourselves* (the person who is speaking, and giving the present). But we still want to show extra respect. We can use a humble verb to figuratively lower ourselves down when giving the gift – almost as if we're bowing down and holding up the present to them. Here is what the sentence could look like using a humble verb:

내일 선물을 드릴 거예요.

"I will give you a present tomorrow."

This sentence has the same meaning as the first one, but we've switched the verb 주다 ("to give") with 드리다 ("to give"), which is a humble verb.

Using 드리다 shows humility from the speaker toward the person who he or she is giving something to.

보다 (or 뵈다) "to see"

보다 (or sometimes 뵈다) is another common humble verb. Here's an example of a regular sentence:

내일 봐요.

"I'll see you tomorrow."

What if we are saying this sentence to our boss? Although we can of course change the ~요 form to the ~니다 form, this would not show enough extra respect. Instead, we can add humility to our sentence and increase how much respect is shown to the boss.

We can exchange 보다 ("to see") for the verb 뵈다 ("to see"), or 뵈다 ("to see" – a tiny bit more humble). Here's what the sentence would look like:

내일 뵈요.

"I'll see you tomorrow."

Both 보다 and 뵈다 conjugate as 뵈요 in the ~요 form, or 뵈니다 and 뵈습니다 in the ~니다 form.

And both sentences (봐요 and 뵈요) have the same literal meaning. The second sentence shows extra humility toward the boss.

Mid-Lesson Review

So around here you might be expecting a list of verbs that can become humble verbs. Fortunately, there aren't many humble verbs we have to learn – there are only 2 common humble verbs that we need to learn, and we've already covered them (드리다 and 보다/봬다).

Let's do a quick recap. Using honorific verbs shows extra respect toward the person who we're talking *about*. Using a humble verb is kind of like the speaker is also bowing down toward the person who they're talking about – lowering themselves.

Because of this, you'll never use humble speech (such as 드리다) when someone else is giving something to you, because that would be figuratively making them bow down to you.

Honorific and Humble Particles

There are a few particles that are also preferred when using honorific speech or humble speech. These particles show extra respect to the person that they come after (they're only used with people). Here are those particles:

(Subject Marker) 이/가 → 께서

(Topic Marker) 은/는 → 께서는

(To/From [a person]) 에게(서) → 께

Let's look at an example of each one:

아버지**께서** 집에 안 계세요.

"Dad is not at home."

Using 아버지**가** would still be grammatically correct, but would not show the proper amount of respect to the dad. Since we're already using 계시다 instead of 있다, it's best to complete the sentence by also using one of these particles.

이제 할머니**께서**는 주무실 거예요.

"Grandma will sleep now."

This sentence uses not only the particle **께서**, but also the honorific verb **주무시다** ("to sleep"). It shows a proper amount of extra respect to the grandmother.

선생님**께** 선물을 드렸어요.

"I gave the teacher a present."

This sentence has the same grammatical meaning as **선생님에게** 선물을 줬어요, but shows not only extra respect by using **께**, but humility by using the verb **드리다** instead of the normal verb **주다**.

Advanced Notes

~해 드리다

드리다 can also be used in place of **주다** when doing and asking for favors. For a review of this, see Episode 36. Here's an example.

제가 해 줄게요.

제가 해 드릴게요.

"I'll do it for you."

Conclusion

Honorific speech and humble verbs can be confusing at first, because English doesn't have a similar concept. But these are essential to speaking Korean like a native.

Not being a native Korean means that you won't be held to the same standard as a Korean would, and mistakes are often forgiven. However, the more Korean you are able to use, the more you will be expected to properly use politeness levels, honorific speech, and humble verbs.

It will take practice to feel comfortable with these concepts. Take your time, because these are not beginner concepts. They can only be mastered through frequent review and practice.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 95: Causative Verbs

This lesson will cover “causative verbs” and how to use them. Don’t be scared by hearing the word “causative.” A causative verb is just a verb that *causes* someone else (or something else) to do something.

In fact, this isn’t a new concept. In a previous episode we already learned how to “cause” someone to do something, using this form:

Verb Stem + 게 하다 (or 만들다)

To make the sentence, “I made my friend angry,” we can say either of these sentences:

제 친구를 화나게 했어요.
제 친구를 화나게 만들었어요.

Here, we’re *causing* the friend to be angry. Causative verbs just give us an easier way to do this same thing, without using that form. And causative verbs will help your Korean to sound more natural, because their literal meaning is different – we’ll talk about this.

First, here’s another example using the previous grammar form.

저는 철수가 일어나게 만들었어요.
“I made Chul-soo wake up.”

This sentence makes perfect sense, but the sentence sounds a bit boring and literal. There is a more natural way that we could say this sentence in Korean... but actually there’s even a more natural way we could say this in English too. How about instead of making him wake up, we just “wake” him up? The sentence “I woke Chul-soo up” would have practically the same meaning, but would sound a lot more natural in both English and Korean. This is an example of a causative verb that we can use in Korean. Here it is:

깨우다 “to wake (someone) up”

And when we use causative verbs, we don't need any special grammar forms. They can be used more simply. The previous sentence can be translated like this:

저는 철수를 깨웠어요.
"I woke up Chul-soo."

This sentence is much shorter, and more natural. It's also simpler to make because we didn't need the previous grammar form.

Now you might be wondering if you have to learn a new causative verb for every Korean verb. Fortunately, the answer is "no." There are only a handful of commonly used causative verbs that you should learn right away. The rest you can learn through conversation practice and regular exposure. I'll talk about why this is in a bit.

Here are 10 common causative verbs.

먹이다 → "to feed" ("to make someone eat")

This comes from 먹다 ("to eat").

죽이다 → "to kill" ("to make someone die")

This comes from 죽다 ("to die").

깨우다 → "to wake up" ("to make someone wake up")

This comes from 깨다 ("to wake oneself up").

앉히다 → "to seat" ("to make someone sit down")

This comes from 앉다 ("to sit down").

울리다 → "to make (someone) cry"

This comes from 울다 ("to cry").

낮추다 → "to lower"

This comes from 낮다 ("to be low").

높이다 → “to raise”

This comes from 높다 (“to be high”).

태우다 → “to give (someone) a ride”

This comes from 타다 (“to ride [a vehicle]”).

알리다 → “to inform” (“to make someone know”)

This comes from 알다 (“to know”). This is also where the verb 알려주다 (“to tell”) comes from.

시키다 → “to force” (“to make someone do”)

This is the causative form of the regular action verb 하다 (“to do”). You can use this verb instead of 하게 하다 or 하게 만들다. For example, instead of saying 일하게 만들었어요 (“I made someone work.”) you can say 일을 시켰어요.

Note about Causative Verbs

If the concept of “causative verbs” confuses you, don’t think of these as being *causative verbs* at all. Instead, just memorize them the same way you’d memorize any verbs. For example, just memorize 죽이다 as “to kill,” 높이다 as “to raise,” and so forth.

Now let’s talk more about how to use causative verbs. Let’s make the sentence “I made Chul-soo work.” First, here is how we can say it *without* using causative verbs:

저는 철수가 일하게 만들었어요.

And here’s how we can say it with a causative verb.

저는 철수에게 일을 시켰어요.

Notice how the sentence using a causative verb (here, 시키다) also uses 에게 instead of the Subject Marker (이/가) after 철수. I want to explain why this is. I should note that this might

seem complicated, but it is interesting and worth learning in order to better understand exactly how causative verbs work and how to use them.

Let's look at the literal meaning of each sentence. The first sentence (저는 철수가 일하게 만들었어요) literally means "I made it so that Chul-soo works" or "I made things so that Chul-soo works." It means that you are doing something (what it is isn't stated) in order to cause the situation to be so that Chul-soo works. We use the Subject Marker (이/가) after 철수 because he is the person who we are making do the work. This is what the 게 하다 or 게 만들다 forms literally mean. More naturally translated, we would just say "I made Chul-soo work."

Causative verbs don't translate in that way. The second sentence (저는 철수에게 일을 시켰어요) literally means "I forced the work to Chul-soo." Here, we mark work (일) with the Object Marker (을/를) because that shows what it is that we're forcing. And we mark 철수 with 에게 because he is the person we are forcing that work *to*. You'll often see 에게 used with causative verbs for this reason.

Here are two more examples:

저는 철수가 빵을 먹게 만들었어요.

"I made Chul-soo eat bread."

저는 철수에게 빵을 먹였어요.

"I fed bread to Chul-soo."

The first sentence literally means "I *made things so that* Chul-soo eats bread." The second sentence literally means "I fed bread *to* Chul-soo." This is why it can be simpler to memorize causative verbs the same way as any other verb – because here, 먹이다 translates as "feed" or "make someone eat." 빵을 먹였어요 means "I fed bread" or "I made someone eat bread." Causatives are also easier to use because of this, so I recommend using them whenever possible.

Advanced Notes

시키다 can also be used in one more way – when ordering *food* (and only food). You can translate 시키다 as “to order” when you’re ordering food for *delivery*. In this way, it can be used in the same way as 주문(을) 하다 (“to order”).

Recognizing Causative Verbs

Memorize the sounds 이히리기우구추 for easily recognizing causative verbs. These are the 7 sounds that you will find in causative verbs. For example, 먹이다, 앉히다, 올리다, 웃기다, 태우다, and 낮추다. Of these 7, 구 is rarely used.

에게 and 에

When what you are causing to do is not a person, but an *object*, use 에 instead of 에게.

More Causative Verbs

Here are a few more useful and common causative verbs:

재우다 → “to put someone to sleep.” This comes from 자다 (“to sleep”).

웃기다 → “to make someone laugh.” This comes from 웃다 (“to laugh”). This is also used simply to mean “to be hilarious” or “to be laughably funny.” A funny joke can be 웃기다.

입히다 → “to dress.” This comes from 입다 (“to wear”). You can use this whenever you’re dressing someone, or something (such as putting clothes on a doll).

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 96: Passive Verbs

In order to learn about passive verbs, we first have to talk about two important topics – passive voice and active voice.

Passive Voice & Active Voice

First, if a sentence is in “passive voice” then it’s not in “active voice,” and if a sentence is in “active voice” then it’s not in “passive voice.”

Here is an example of a sentence that is in active voice.

The lion **ate** the rabbit.

And here is the same sentence written in passive voice.

The rabbit **was eaten** by the lion.

Active voice is much more commonly used than passive voice, but both are important to know.

Active Voice

When a sentence is in active voice, the **subject** of that sentence is the person (or thing) that is **doing** something. Or, the subject is what you are directly describing.

In the sentence “The lion ate the rabbit,” the **lion** is the *subject*. Here, the subject (the lion) is doing something. The lion **eats** the rabbit.

Passive Voice

When a sentence is in passive voice, the **subject** of that sentence is **not** the person (or thing) that is doing something. Instead, the subject is **being affected** by an action.

In the sentence “The rabbit was eaten by the lion,” the subject isn’t the lion. The subject is the **rabbit**. The rabbit is being affected by the action of being eaten.

In addition, in the passive version there is no need to say who or what does the action. In our example passive sentence, we don’t actually need to say “by the lion.” Just the sentence “The rabbit was eaten” already uses the passive voice. Because of this, the passive voice can sometimes sound vague (“Who or what ate that rabbit?”), or sound like someone is speaking backwards.

Most sentences in English and Korean will be in active voice. Active voice is the most common and clear way of speaking – and it’s the most direct.

How to Use the Passive Voice

To change an active sentence in Korean to the passive voice, you only need to change the active verb for a passive verb.

For example, instead of 먹다 (“to eat”), we can use the passive verb “to be eaten” (먹히다). Here is how that would look:

사자가 토끼를 **먹었어요**.

“The lion **ate** the rabbit.”

토끼가 (사자에게) **먹혔어요**.

“The rabbit **was eaten** (by the lion).”

To specify who the subject is being affected *by*, use the particle 에게 (or 에 for inanimate objects).

Although there are a lot of passive verbs in Korean, you can get a lot of mileage out of learning only a few of the most common ones. Here is one of *the most* commonly used passive verbs.

되다

“to become,” “to be okay,” “to function”

Since you're learning about passive verbs, you've most likely seen 되다 used before many times. This verb is the passive form of the regular active verb 하다 (“to do”).

If an action verb uses 하다 and the 하다 can be separated (for example, 공부(를) 하다 is *okay*, while 좋아하다 is *not* because 하다 can't be separated, and 피곤하다 is *not* because it's a descriptive verb), simply change the 하다 into 되다 to make it a passive verb. Here's an example:

준비(를) 하다 → “to prepare”

준비(가) 되다 → “to be prepared”

다 준비했어요.

“I prepared it all.”

다 준비됐어요.

“It was all prepared.”

시작(을) 하다 → “to start”

시작(이) 되다 → “to be started”

수업은 8 시에 시작했어요.

“Class started at 8 o'clock.”

수업은 8 시에 시작됐어요.

“Class was started at 8 o'clock.”

이해(를) 하다 → “to understand”

이해(가) 되다 → “to be understood”

숙제를 이해했어요?

"Did you understand the homework?"

숙제가 이해됐어요?

"Was the homework understood?"

주문(을) 하다 → "to order"

주문(이) 되다 → "to be ordered"

제가 주문한 음식이 도착했어요.

"The food that I ordered arrived."

주문된 음식이 도착했어요.

"The food that was ordered arrived."

Unique Passive Verbs

Not every action verb ends with 하다, but Korean has some unique passive verbs that can be used in place of regular action verbs.

먹히다 → "to be eaten." This comes from 먹다 ("to eat").

저는 치즈를 먹었어요.

"I ate the cheese."

저에게 치즈가 먹혔어요.

"The cheese was eaten by me."

쓰이다 → "to be written," "to be used." This comes from 쓰다 ("to write," "to use").

제가 자주 쓰는 책

"a book that I use often"

자주 쓰이는 책
"a book that is used often"

바뀌다 → "to be changed." This comes from 바꾸다 ("to change").

제 성격을 바꿨어요.
"I changed my personality."

제 성격이 바뀌었어요.
"My personality was changed."

보이다

보이다 means "to be seen." It comes from 보다 ("to see"). And 보이다 is used to mean that someone is **able** to see something. So a better translation is "to be visible." Here's an example.

철수의 얼굴이 안 보여요.
"Chul-soo's face is not **seen**."
"Chul-soo's face is not **visible**."
"I **can't see** Chul-soo's face."

An even more natural way to translate 보이다 is using active voice in English – "to be able to see." Here's another example:

저기에 보이는 집이에요.
"It's the house that is **seen** over there."
"It's the house that is **visible** over there."
"It's the house that you **can see** over there."

들리다

들리다 means “to be heard.” It comes from 듣다 (“to hear”). And 들리다 is used to mean that someone is **able** to hear something. So a better translation is “to be audible.” Here’s an example.

철수의 목소리가 안 들려요.
 “Chul-soo’s voice is not **heard**.”
 “Chul-soo’s voice is not **audible**.”
 “I **can’t hear** Chul-soo’s voice.”

An even more natural way to translate 들리다 is using active voice in English – “to be able to hear.” Here’s another example:

잘 들려요?
 “Is it **heard** well?”
 “Is it **audible** well?”
 “**Can you hear** it well?”

Notes on 보이다 and 들리다

Since 보이다 and 들리다 are used when talking about things that you can or can’t see and hear, you might wonder if it’s okay to instead just use these verbs:

볼 수 있다
 “can see...”

들을 수 있다
 “can hear...”

It’s okay to use these forms instead, but know that these are **active voice** and are not passive voice. Although 보이다 and 들리다 are passive verbs, they are both *more commonly* used than their active forms. Here’s an example of each form:

철수의 얼굴을 볼 수 없고 목소리도 들을 수 없어요.

철수의 얼굴이 안 보이고 목소리도 안 들려요.

"I **can't see** Chul-soo's face and I **can't hear** his voice."

받다

"to get," "to receive"

Some active verbs can become passive verbs using 받다 ("to get," "to receive").

사랑(을) 하다 → "to love"

사랑(을) 받다 → "to be loved"

존경(을) 하다 → "to respect"

존경(을) 받다 → "to be respected"

버리다 → "to throw away"

버림(을) 받다 → "to be thrown away"

감동(을) 시키다 → "to move (emotionally)," "to touch (emotionally)"

감동(을) 받다 → "to be moved (emotionally)," "to be touched (emotionally)"

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. + 지다

For many other verbs, you can use this form to change active voice into passive voice.

Take a verb stem and conjugate it as if you were conjugating the ㅁ form. Instead of ㅁ, attach 지다. Then conjugate this however you'd like. Here are some examples:

주다 → "to give"

주어지다 → "to be given"

선물이 주어졌어요.

"A present was given."

만들다 → "to make"

만들어지다 → "to be made"

나무로 만들어진 책상을 샀어요.

"I bought a desk made of wood."

정하다 → "to decide (something)," "to set (something)"

정해지다 → "to be decided," "to be set"

정해진 날짜에 만났어요.

"We met on the decided date."

짓다 → "to build"

지어지다 → "to be built"

그 집이 빨리 지어졌어요.

"That house was built quickly."

깨다 → "to break (something)," "to smash (something)"

깨어지다 → "to be broken," "to be smashed." This is more commonly shortened to 깨지다.

컵이 떨어져서 깨졌어요.

"The cup fell and broke."

When to Use Passive Voice

What if you wanted to make the sentence, "I want to buy a book written in Korean," but didn't know passive voice? You might first try to make this sentence:

저는 한국말로 쓴 책을 사고 싶어요.

"I want to buy a book (that someone wrote) in Korean."

This sentence makes sense, but is not passive. In our English example, we didn't need to specify who wrote the sentence. Instead of using 쓴 ("someone wrote") we can use 쓰인 ("written") and avoid saying who wrote the book.

저는 한국말로 쓰인 책을 사고 싶어요.
"I want to buy a book written in Korean."

Whenever you are using an *action* verb (not a descriptive verb) to describe something, and you want that meaning to be passive, I recommend using a passive verb. This is the one situation where you will commonly hear passive verbs used in Korean.

Passive voice is perfect for saying that something happens to someone (or something) without having to say who (or what) caused it to happen.

Final Notes

Passive voice and passive verbs take time to master. Feel free to speak using only active voice until you feel more comfortable using passive voice. Koreans themselves don't use passive verbs too often, and you won't be corrected for speaking in active voice instead of passive voice. Active voice is still a correct way of speaking, and passive voice is simply another tool.

It's not necessary to learn every passive verb. Just learn a few of the most common ones right away, and the basic rules for how to use them. Through listening and speaking practice you'll be able to master them. In fact, you'll even start recognizing passive verbs that you've never heard before, simply by listening to how the verbs are being used.

Feel free to come back to review passive verbs again in the near future.

Advanced Notes

"By:" Noun + 에 의해(서)

In addition to 에게 (and 에 for inanimate objects), you can also specify "by" with this form. This is less common when speaking, but is used in writing.

원숭이가 사자에 의해 먹혔어요.
"The monkey was eaten **by** the lion."

More Passive Verbs

Here are just a few more commonly used passive verbs:

쌓이다 → "to be stacked," "to be piled (up)." This comes from 쌓다 ("to stack," "to pile (up)").

잠기다 → "to be locked." This comes from 잠그다 ("to lock").

없어지다 → "to disappear." This comes from 없다 ("to not exist").

켜지다 → "to be turned on." This comes from 켜다 ("to turn on").

꺼지다 → "to be turned off." This comes from 끄다 ("to turn off").

열리다 → "to be opened." This comes from 열다 ("to open").

닫히다 → "to be closed." This comes from 닫다 ("to close").

밀리다 → "to be pushed." This comes from 밀다 ("to push").

당겨지다 → "to be pulled." This comes from 당기다 ("to pull").

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 97: Korean Numbers Part 1 (Sino-Korean)

The first thing to know about Korean numbers is that there are actually *two* separate number systems. For example, to count "1, 2, 3" you can either say "일, 이, 삼" or "하나, 둘, 셋." This lesson will cover the first of these two systems, which is called the Sino-Korean number system. *Sino* means that it's from Chinese, and these numbers originally came from Chinese characters (一, 二, 三, etc.). The second system we'll talk about in the next episode, and those are Pure Korean numbers.

Fortunately learning two separate number systems isn't as complicated as it might sound. In some ways learning two systems is simpler than learning only one. So let's learn the first 10 numbers in the Sino-Korean number system.

1 - 10

- 1 → 일
- 2 → 이
- 3 → 삼
- 4 → 사
- 5 → 오
- 6 → 육
- 7 → 칠
- 8 → 팔
- 9 → 구
- 10 → 십

Here's the easy part. Once you know these 10 numbers, you can use them create any number up to 99. To do this, it only takes simple math. For example, to make the number 11, simply break apart the two digits – 10 and 1.

The first digit is in the tens place, and is just 10, so we can say 십. The second digit is just 1, so we can say 일. 십 and 일 makes 십일, and now we have 11.

Let's make 59. The first digit in the tens place is 50. To make 50 we need a 5 and a 10, so 오 and 십. 오십 is 50. Then the next digit is just a 9, 구. So we put them together and get 오십구.

Advanced Notes: In addition to these, the number for 0 in the Sino-Korean number system is 영. You'll only need to use 영 when the number itself is simply 0, and not when a 0 appears somewhere in a number.

So let's review before we go further. Here are the numbers for 11 to 19.

11 – 19

11 → 십일

Note that 11 is just 십일, not 일십일 (one ten one). If the number is the same as the digit that it represents (here 10 is in the 10s place), then you don't have to say 1 before it. This will be important to know later as well for larger numbers.

12 → 십이

13 → 십삼

14 → 십사

15 → 십오

16 → 십육

16 is pronounced "심륙" (not 시륙). This is due to sound change rules, and the fact that these numbers come from Chinese.

Advanced Notes: *The in-depth reason is because 육 is originally from a Chinese character that is pronounced in Korean as 륵 when not at the start of a word, so the ㅄ at the bottom of 십 and ㅅ at the front of 륵 change to become ㅁ+ㄴ. You can review sound change rules in my "Learn Hangeul" series.*

17 → 십칠

18 → 십팔

18 can sound similar to a common Korean swear word, so be careful when pronouncing it. Make sure to say 8 as 팔 (using ㅍ as it's spelled) and **not** incorrectly as 발.

19 → 십구

Practice #1

Practice reading these numbers on your own first. The answers are at the bottom.

29

35

42

51

66

77

84

99

Answers: 이십구, 삼십오, 사십이, 오십일, 육십육, 칠십칠, 팔십사, 구십구

Note that 십육 in 66 is also pronounced as 심륙, even when another number comes in front of it such as in this example.

Over 100

To go further we'll need to know the number for the 100s place. We can't just say 십십 to make "10 10" equal 100. The number for 100 is 백.

So to say 100, you can just say 백 (not 일백, as we learned before). To say 110 you can say 백십 (100 + 10), and to say 111 you can say 백십일 (100 + 10 + 1).

Practice #2

Practice reading these numbers on your own first. The answers are at the bottom.

120

241

350

404

590
600
777
819
963

Answers: 백이십, 이백사십일, 삼백오십, 사백사, 오백구십, 육백, 칠백칠십칠, 팔백십구, 구백육십삼.

Note that 404 is just 사백사. Any time there's no digit in a place (such as here with no digit in the 10s place), we can just ignore it.

Over 1,000

The counter for 1,000 is 천. For example, 1,234 is 천이백삼십사.

Now, using 십 for 10, 백 for 100, and 천 for 1,000, we can count all the way to 9,999.

After 9,999 we can use the counter 만 (10,000). For example, 10,400 is 만사백.

Practice #3

Practice reading these numbers on your own first. The answers are at the bottom.

1010
2300
5802
8687
12050
15000
20000
33100
54321
99999

Answers: 천십, 이천삼백, 오천팔백이, 팔천육백팔십칠, 만이천오십, 만오천, 이만, 삼만삼천백, 오만사천삼백이십일, 구만구천구백구십구

To 100,000 and Beyond

In Korean there's no counter for a hundred thousand. Instead, 만 becomes 십만 (10 10 thousand). This continues. A million is 백만 (100 10 thousand) and ten million is 천만 (1,000 10 thousand). This is quite different from how numbers in English work.

You don't need to master Korean numbers overnight. In fact, practice with small numbers just to get the hang of it. Through practicing *how* the number system works, you'll be better able to create larger numbers. Practicing with larger numbers is just unnecessary and demotivating. Regardless, here are some larger numbers to look at for reference.

100,000	→ 십만
200,230	→ 이십만이백삼십
410,000	→ 사십일만

Note that 410,000 must be 사십일만 and not just 사십만 because that would be 400 thousand (40 * 10,000).

401,000	→ 사십만천
1,000,000	→ 백만
3,000,050	→ 삼백만오십
10,000,000	→ 천만
90,800,000	→ 구천팔십만

100,000,000 and More

Currently using 십, 백, 천, and 만 we can go up to 99,999,999. In order to go higher the next digit is 억, which is 100,000,000 (a hundred million). 억 works just like 만, becoming 십억 (a billion), 백억 (10 billion), and 천억 (100 billion).

Of course there are digits even higher than 억 (such as 조 for a trillion), but those won't be necessary for any sort of regular conversation (unless you're studying to become a financial analyst for a giant company, in which case you know where the Donate button on my web site is).

When to Use Sino-Korean Numbers

This system is used in many situations, the most common being counting *money*. Specifically, Sino-Korean numbers are used when counting Korean Won (원). At the time of this lesson, 1 US dollar is worth approximately 1,000 원, but it fluctuates daily.

To count currency in Won, simply put the amount before 원 using Sino-Korean numbers.

So to say a thousand 원 (approximately \$1), just say 천원. To say ten thousand 원 (approximately \$10), just say 만원.

Typical Korean yearly salaries will be expressed using increments of 천만원 (10s of thousands of dollars – 10,000,000 원). Higher paying jobs will be expressed using 억원 (100,000,000 원 or higher).

Conclusion

You don't need to master these numbers overnight. Take the time to practice them, and focus on smaller numbers when learning how the number system works. After time and with practice you'll slowly get faster at both understanding and saying these numbers for yourself.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 98: Korean Numbers Part 2 (Pure Korean)

In the last episode we learned about Sino-Korean numbers and how to use that system when counting 원. However, the Sino-Korean number system can't be used to count *everything*. There are some things that the Sino-Korean system will be used for when counting (such as 원 as we learned) and other things that the Pure Korean number system will need to be used for.

For example, to count 500 Won we can just say 오백원. But to count 5 *people* or 5 *monkeys* we can't simply say "오사람" or "오원숭이." In fact, saying "오 원숭이" would just mean "Oh, monkey!" To count a larger variety of things, we'll need to also learn the Pure Korean number system.

The next lesson will cover in more detail how to count using these two systems, so for now let's first go over the Pure Korean number system.

1 - 10

- 1 → 하나
- 2 → 둘
- 3 → 셋
- 4 → 넷
- 5 → 다섯
- 6 → 여섯
- 7 → 일곱
- 8 → 여덟

Note that 6 is just pronounced as "여덟" due to sound change rules.

- 9 → 아홉
- 10 → 열

To make 11, it works just like in the Sino-Korean number system. We can look at the 10s digit and see that it's just 10, so we can first say 열. Then the next digit also has a 1, which is 하나. 열 하나 is 11. We can continue this to 19.

- 11 → 열 하나
- 12 → 둘
- 13 → 열 셋
- 14 → 열 넷
- 15 → 열 다섯
- 16 → 열 여섯
- 17 → 열 일곱
- 18 → 열 여덟
- 19 → 열 아홉

After 19 is where Pure Korean numbers differ from Sino-Korean numbers. In Sino-Korean numbers, we could continue until 99 using the same 10 numbers, but in Pure Korean numbers each multiple of 10 has its own number. So each time we enter a new multiple of 10 (20, 30, 40, etc.) we'll need to switch to that number instead. There is a similar concept in English (ten, twenty, thirty, etc.).

To say 21, first say 20 (스물), then 1 (하나). So 스물 하나 is 21. Here are the rest of the numbers we'll need to learn.

10 - 90

Wait. Before you memorize these, just take a moment to look them over.

- 10 → 열
- 20 → 스물
- 30 → 서른
- 40 → 마흔
- 50 → 쉰
- 60 → 예순
- 70 → 일흔
- 80 → 여든
- 90 → 아흔

This might seem like a lot of extra work, but fortunately (here's the cool part) we don't really need 60 to 90 most of the time. And, you can probably get away with ignoring 50 too. *Usually* once a number gets above 40 or 50, Koreans will just switch back to using the Sino-Korean number system – no matter what they were counting. Basically, Pure Korean numbers are mainly only used from 1 up to 49 or 59.

To make things even simpler, once a number gets above 99, Koreans will *only* use Sino-Korean numbers. This means that once you've learned the first 10 numbers, and the digits for 20, 30, 40, and maybe 50, you've learned all of the Pure Korean number system (for a total of 13 or 14 words).

However I've included all of the digits anyway for reference, so that you can be aware of them. Older Koreans will typically still use digits in Pure Korean above 50, but it depends on the person. Still, above 99 everyone switches to Sino-Korean numbers.

Advanced Notes: *There technically are numbers in the Pure Korean system for a hundred (은), a thousand (즈믄), and higher. However, these larger numbers are all archaic and have not been used in a very long time. Most Koreans will not even be aware of these numbers.*

Practice

Practice reading these Pure Korean numbers on your own. The answers are at the bottom.

15

23

35

38

41

Answers: 열 다섯, 스물 셋, 서른 다섯, 서른 여덟, 마흔 하나

Conclusion

A good way to practice Korean numbers (both systems) is by walking around or climbing up steps. Each time you take a step, count one number higher out loud. The more you practice, the better you'll get at reciting and recognizing Korean numbers. As an added bonus, you also won't have to worry about skipping leg day.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 99: Korean Counters

The last two episodes covered Sino-Korean and Pure Korean numbers. Make sure you're familiar with both of those systems before starting this episode.

As I mentioned when talking about Sino-Korean numbers, we can't simply count things by randomly putting a number in front of the thing we want to count. For example, we can't count 5 people by saying "오 사람." In order to count things, we'll need to use things called *counters* in Korean. Depending what we're counting (people, animals, cups, or pizza) we'll need to use a different *counter*.

Won

Sino-Korean + 원

We already covered how to count Won using Sino-Korean numbers (for example, 50 Won is just 오십원).

Counting different things will require using either Sino-Korean or Pure Korean numbers.

But before we jump in, let me clarify something. Every single noun in Korean won't have its own unique counter. If you know the counter for counting *animals*, you can use that for counting sheep or cows or monkeys. There is no separate *monkey counter* (not yet, at least). Also, there aren't *that* many counters you'll need to memorize for most conversation – just a few dozen or so.

Let's cover a few of the most common counters.

People

Pure Korean + 명

To count people, use the Pure Korean number system and attach 명. Note that 명 isn't used by itself to mean "person," it's only used together with Pure Korean numbers when counting. Also, using Sino-Korean numbers with 명 might be understandable in some cases (everyone

makes mistakes), but would sound strange and incorrect. Make sure to learn which number system is used with each counter as you memorize them, to make sure you'll always be understood.

So to say 1 person we'd use the Pure Korean number for 1 (하나) and combine it with this counter 명 and get 한 명 – *record scratch* – But we learned that 1 is 하나, so let's talk about what's happening here.

When the Pure Korean number 1 (하나) is combined with a counter it changes to 한. So 1 person is 한 명 and *not* "하나 명." In fact, the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, and 20 also change when they're used directly before a counter. Take a look.

1	하나	→ 한
2	둘	→ 두
3	셋	→ 세
4	넷	→ 네
20	스물	→ 스무

These changes aren't too severe (even if you forget these and pronounce them wrong, it won't sound *terribly* wrong), but they're still important to know. This change is for both pronunciation *and* when writing the numbers.

Also, note that this is *only* when these numbers come directly before a counter. For example, 20 people is 스무 명, but 21 people is 스물 한 명 (not 스무 한, because 스물 isn't directly in front of the counter 명).

Practice

Before we go further, practice translating these examples. The answers are at the bottom.

1 person

3 people

6 people

10 people

Answers: 한 명, 세 명, 여섯 명, 열 명

Counting Above 40 or 50

As we learned in the previous lesson, Koreans will *usually* switch to Sino-Korean numbers (if they weren't already using Sino-Korean numbers) once the number reaches 40 or 50. Also, Koreans will *always* switch to Sino-Korean numbers for anything above 99.

So to say 50 people, you could either say 오십명, or 쉰 명 if you'd like. And to say 100 people, it's just 백 명.

Let's learn some more common counters.

Animals

Pure Korean + 마리

Counting animals also uses the Pure Korean number system. This includes all types of animals.

To say 3 cows, it would be 소 세 마리. Note that the animal you're counting comes first, if it's not already clear that's what you're counting. For example, if someone asks "How many cows are there?" then the appropriate reply would simply be 세 마리 (3 cows). If someone instead asks "What are

those animals and how many are there?" then the appropriate reply would include 소 세 마리 to clarify.

And the same applies when counting people. It's not necessary to specify that you're counting people when using 명, since 명 is always only used for counting people. Saying 사람 다섯 명 would be unnecessarily repetitive, unless it wasn't clear that you were talking about a *specific* type of person – for example, 한국 사람 다섯 명 (5 *Korean* people). Most of the time you won't need to specify.

Whenever it's already clear what you're counting, there's no need to specify – whether you're counting people, animals, or general things.

General Things

Pure Korean + 개

You can use this counter when counting general things that either don't have their own separate counter, or when counting things that you don't know their counter.

To say 5 chairs, you can say (의자) 다섯 개. Remember that saying 의자 is necessary whenever it's not clear what you're counting. If someone asks "What's in that room?" then the appropriate reply might include 의자 다섯 개 (5 chairs), but if someone asks "How many chairs are there?" then the appropriate reply would just use 다섯 개.

Here are a few examples of this counter.

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 3 hats | → 모자 세 개 |
| 2 pencils | → 연필 두 개 |
| 5 computers | → 컴퓨터 다섯 개 |
| 1 window | → 창문 한 개 |

*Age***Pure Korean + 살**

You can count someone's age (such as saying your own age) with the counter 살.

For example, if you're 31 years old you can say 저는 **서른 한 살**이에요 ("I'm 31 years old.")

Here are some examples.

5 years old	→ 다섯 살
3 years old	→ 세 살
15 years old	→ 열 다섯 살
21 years old	→ 스물 한 살

*Measurements***Sino-Korean**

Many counters used for *measuring* things will use Sino-Korean numbers (but not all). A few common examples are meters (**미터**), liters (**리터**), and degrees (**도**). Here are a few examples.

5 meters	→ 오 미터
8 liters	→ 팔 리터
20 degrees	→ 이십 도

Note that Korea uses *Celsius* (not Fahrenheit). In Celsius, water freezes at 0 degrees and boils at 100 degrees. Temperatures during the winter in Korea will often fall below 0, and during the summer reach the high 30s (which feels like a sauna when combined with the humidity). If you can, I recommend visiting Korea during the spring or fall because you'll more easily be able to enjoy traveling outside.

*Flat Items***Pure-Korean + 장**

“Flat items” includes sheets of paper, as well as (interestingly) T-shirts. Here are a few examples.

1 sheet of paper	→ 종이 한 장
5 sheets of paper	→ 종이 다섯 장
20 sheets of paper	→ 종이 스무 장
1,000 shirts	→ 셔츠 천 장

*Books***Pure-Korean + 권**

Books are counted with 권. Here are some examples.

1 book	→ 책 한 권
5 books	→ 책 다섯 권
24 books	→ 책 스물 네 권

Advanced NotesCounting one:

When counting 1 of any *item*, 하나 will also often be used instead 한 개. Both 하나 and 한 개 are acceptable.

Age above 40:

Usually when counting age (살) above 40 or 50, it's more common to switch to a different counter – 세. The counter 세 is a bit more formal, and is used with Sino-Korean numbers. For example, to say a person is 50 years old, you can say 오십 세. In addition, asking an older person their age is done with a completely different phrase. Instead of asking 나이가 어떻게 돼요? you can ask 연세가 어떻게 되세요? The meanings are the same, but 연세 is a more polite way to say 나이 (a person's age in years).

How many:

몇 (normally meaning “how many”) can also be used as a number before *any counter*. When used this way, it means “a few.” For example, 몇 명이 왔어요 (“A few people came.”). When used in a question, it simply retains its original use as “how many.” For example, 몇 명이 왔어요? (“How many people came?”).

Here are a few more common and useful counters.

Clothing: Pure Korean + 벌

Counting *sets* of clothing, such as suits, can be done with 벌.

(양복) 한 벌 → 1 suit

Words: Pure Korean + 마디

Individual words can be counted with 마디.

(말) 한 마디 → 1 word

Bottles: Pure Korean + 병

(맥주) 열 두 병 → 12 bottles of beer

(물) 세 병 → 3 bottles of water

Long, thin items: Pure Korean + 자루

(연필) 세 자루 → 3 pencils

(칼) 한 자루 → 1 knife

Pairs of socks or shoes: Pure Korean + 켤레

(양말) 두 켤레 → 2 pairs of socks

(신발) 한 켤레 → 1 pair of shoes

Pizza: Pure Korean + 판

(피자) 스물 세 판 → 23 pizzas

Plates: Pure Korean + 접시

(볶음밥) 여덟 접시 → 8 plates of fried rice

Cups: Pure Korean + 컵

(물) 한 컵 → 1 cup of water

Trees: Pure Korean + 그루

(나무) 한 그루 → 1 tree

Appliances and Cars: Pure Korean + 대

(자동차) 두 대 → 2 cars

(컴퓨터) 열 네 대 → 14 computers

Pieces: Pure Korean + 조각

(빵) 한 조각 → 1 piece of bread

(피자) 네 조각 → 4 pieces of pizza

Times: Pure Korean + 번

한 번 → once, one time

두 번 → twice, two times

열 번 → ten times

백 번 → 100 times

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 100: 하고 있다 vs. 해 있다 (Verb States)

Before starting this lesson, first make sure that you're comfortable with both the Progressive Tense and Passive speech. There are video lessons on both of these topics on my channel and web site (as well as free PDFs) so check those out first.

For a quick review, the Progressive Tense is used to say that something is *currently* happening or that you're *currently* doing something. Here's an example.

지금 하고 있어요.

"I'm doing it now."

Passive speech is used whenever the subject of a sentence is also the object of an action. For example, in a regular (active) sentence we might say this:

원숭이는 사자를 먹었어요.

"The monkey ate the lion."

The same sentence made into passive voice might be this:

사자가 원숭이에게 먹혔어요.

"The lion was eaten by the monkey."

That's a seriously dangerous monkey, but back to the lesson. We can combine both the Passive Tense and Passive voice together. Take this sentence for example:

저는 문을 닫았어요.

"I closed the door."

Let's re-write this sentence using the Progressive Tense.

저는 문을 닫고 있었어요.

"I was closing the door."

Now let's re-write that sentence by changing it to passive voice. So the verb 닫다 ("to close") will become 닫히다 ("to be closed").

문이 닫혔어요.

"The door was closed."

If any of this is confusing so far, re-watch the episodes on Progressive Tense and/or Passive voice on my channel which cover these concepts in detail.

So what if we wanted to say something a bit different: "The door *is currently* closed." As in, the door was closed (perhaps someone closed it), and it's still in the *state* of being closed. To do that, we'll need a new form.

Action Verb Stem + 여/아/etc. 있다

To use it, take the verb stem of an action verb and conjugate it as if you were conjugating the 요 form. Then attach the verb 있다 ("to exist") and conjugate that.

We can use this form to say that something is in the *state* of having done something (or having something done to it). For example, we can use this form with our previous example to say that the door was closed, and that it's *still* in the state of being closed. More naturally, we would say "The door is (still) closed."

For our example, we can take 닫히다 ("to be closed" or "to get closed") and conjugate it to 닫혀 있다 ("to *be* closed" or "to be in the state of having been closed"). Now instead of saying that the door is currently in the *process* of being closed, or that the door *was* closed, we can say that the door **is** closed.

This form can therefore be used to show that something is still in the state of having done some verb – and that verb can be either active or passive. It might sound like this form will rarely be used, but it's actually quite common. Here's another example.

Take the verb 앉다 (“to sit down”). We can change it to the Progressive Tense by making it 앉고 있다 (“to be in the process of sitting down”). If you use 앉고 있다 when talking about someone, it means that person hasn’t yet sat down but is in currently leaning backward and moving toward the chair. I can’t think of any real situation where you’d need to use 앉고 있다 unless you’re describing a sloth taking a seat. Usually sitting down is a very quick process, so a person is either already sitting down or standing.

If we want to say that someone has already sat down (meaning that they’re in the *state* of having sat down, and are still like that), then you can use this form: 앉아 있다. This means “to be sitting down,” as in “someone has sat down, and is still in the state of having sat down. Here’s an example.

철수가 저기에 앉아 있어요.

“Chul-soo is sitting over there.”

Contrast this sentence with the Progressive Tense: 철수가 저기에 앉고 있어요. This sentence would mean something like “Chul-soo is in the process of sitting down, but hasn’t yet sat down. I have no idea why he’s taking so long to sit down.”

Here are a few more common examples of this form.

열리다 → “to open”

열려 있다 → “to be open”

창문이 열려 있었어요.

“The window was open.”

살다 → “to live”

살아 있다 → “to be alive”

벌레가 아직 살아 있어! 빨리 죽여!

“The bug is still alive! Hurry and kill it!”

서다 → "to stand"
서 있다 → "to be standing"

철수가 김 선생님 옆에 서 있어요.
"Chul-soo is standing next to Mr. Kim."

깨어지다 → "to break"
깨어져 있다 → "to be broken"

유리가 깨어져 있지 않아요. 깨어지지 않았어요.
"The glass isn't broken. It didn't break."

The above sentence uses both the new form *and* the regular past tense to show how they're different. It also shows how you can make this form negative, by changing 있다 into 있지 않다 and conjugating it.

연결이 되다 → "to become connected"
연결이 되어 있다 → "to be connected."

선이 연결되어 있어요.
"The wires are connected."

Advanced Notes:

있다 and 계시다:

When using *honorific speech*, you can switch 있다 with 계시다. You can review honorific speech on my channel or web site (Learn Korean #93 and #94). Here's an example:

선생님께서 저기에 앉아 계시요.
"The teacher is sitting over there."

Two more examples:

눅다 → "to lie down"
누워 있다 → "to be lying down"

철수가 소파에 누워 있어요.
"Chul-soo is lying on the sofa."

죽다 → "to die"
죽어 있다 → "to be dead"

원숭이가 죽어 있어요.
"The monkey is dead."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 101: More Than & Less Than

This lesson will cover a few useful *adverbs* that you can use to mean “more than” or “less than.” Let’s jump right in!

더 – “more”

Here’s a useful *adverb* – 더 (“more”). This adverb can be attached directly before a verb. Let’s take a look at two examples.

야채를 더 먹고 싶어요.

I want to eat *more* vegetables.

더 주세요.

Please give me *more*.

You can also use adverbs before other descriptive verbs (or adjectives). Here’s an example:

피자가 더 맛있어요.

Pizza is *more* delicious.

덜 – “less”

The opposite of 더 is 덜, which means “less.” And you can use 덜 in the same way as 더, right before an action verb or descriptive verb. Here are a few examples of 덜.

저는 수지를 덜 좋아해요.

I like Suzy *less*.

수지가 덜 예뻐요.

Suzy is less pretty.

제시카가 더 예뻐요.

"Jessica is prettier."

Literally this sentence above means Jessica is *more* pretty, but you can translate it more *naturally* as "Jessica is prettier."

Therefore 더 can also be used to add the meaning of "~er" to any descriptive verb. Here are a few examples:

큰 케이크 means a **big** cake, and 더 큰 케이크 means a **bigger** cake.

- 큰 comes from 크다 ("to be big").

빠른 차 means a **fast** car, and 더 빠른 차 means a **faster** car.

- 빠른 comes from 빠르다 ("to be fast").

And 좋은 집 means a **good** house, and 더 좋은 집 means a **better** house.

- 좋은 comes from 좋다 ("to be good").

Making Comparisons

But that's not all, we can also use 더 and 덜 to make *comparisons* between **two** people or things. For example, we can not only say that Jessica is *prettier*, but we can also use 더 to say that Jessica is prettier *than* Suzy. Here's an example:

제시카가 수지보다 더 예뻐요.

Jessica is prettier *than* Suzy.

Noun + 보다 (더)

This is the form we'll need to make comparisons between two people or things.

Take a noun that you want to compare someone or something else to, and attach 보다. Then *optionally* you can attach 더 if you want. If you choose not to attach 더, by *default* this grammar form will still mean "**more** than." But if you wanted to say that something is *less than* something else, then you have to include 덜. Here are a few examples:

이 숙제가 그 숙제보다 더 어려워요.

This homework is more difficult than that homework.

Remember that when you're saying something is *more* than something else, the 더 is *optional*, but I've added it here to make the sentence more clear.

물이 사이다보다 더 맛있어요.

Water is more delicious than soda.

You can also translate this sentence more naturally as just "Water tastes better than soda," since 맛(이) 있다 ("to be delicious") can also translate naturally as just "to taste good" or "to have a good flavor."

돼지고기가 소고기보다 덜 비싸요.

Pork is less expensive than beef.

철수가 영희보다 키가 더 커요.

Chul-soo is taller than Yeong-hee.

Since 키(가) 크다 means "to be tall," I added 더 here directly *in front of* the descriptive verb 크다 ("to be big"). The word 키 literally means "stature" or "height." Remember to use 더 or 덜 **directly** before the action verb or descriptive verb.

Advanced Notes:

조금 더: You can also use 조금 ("a little") in combination with 더 ("more") or 덜 ("less") to mean "a little more" or "a little less." Here's an example:

김치를 조금 더 주세요.

"Please give me **a little more** kimchi."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 102: Since doing (은/ㄴ 지 되다)

This lesson will cover how to say "since doing." For example, we'll learn how to say "It's been three years *since* I *began* studying Korean."

Action Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ 지

To use this form, take an *action verb stem* and attach 은 지 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach ㄴ 지 if it ends in a *vowel* (note the spacing). Verb stems ending in ㄹ will remove that letter first. Here are a few examples.

하다 → 한 지
 먹다 → 먹은 지
 살다 → 산 지

Action Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ 지 [Time] + (이/가) 되다

After completing the previous step, here's the full form we'll need to know. To say *how much time* has passed since you did the action, first say the time (such as a week, or a year, etc.). Next, you can *optionally* add the Subject Marker (이/가), and finally conjugate 되다 to the past tense (e.g. 됐어요). Let's look at a few examples.

우리가 만난 지 9 년이 됐어요.
 "It's been nine years since we met."
 More naturally → "We met nine years ago."

한국어를 공부하기 시작한 지 3 년이 됐어요.
 "It's been three years since I began studying Korean."
 More naturally → "I've been studying Korean for three years."

한국에 온 지 10 개월이 된 것 같아요.

"I think it's been ten months since I came to Korea."

More naturally → "I think I've been in Korea for ten months."

여기에서 산 지 오래 됐어요?

"Has it been a long time since you lived here?"

More naturally → "Have you been living here for a long time?"

The *adverb* 오래 means "a long time," and you can use it with 되다 to say that a lot of time (or a long time) has passed.

미술관에 간 지 2 주일이 됐어요.

"It's been two weeks since I went to the art museum."

For more detail, the word 지 in this grammar form actually means "**the time** from when you did something (or something happened) *until right now*." The above sentence could also therefore mean, "The time from when I went to the art museum until now *has been* (literally, 됐어요 means 'became') two weeks."

이 영화를 본 지 1 년이 됐어요.

"It's been 1 year since I watched this movie."

More naturally → "I haven't seen this movie in 1 year."

More literally → "The time since I saw the movie until now is 1 year."

그 친구랑 연락을 안 한 지 10 년이 됐어요.

"It's been 10 years since I haven't contacted with that friend."

More naturally → "I haven't contacted that friend in 10 years."

More literally → "The time since I didn't contact (*no longer contacted*) with that friend has been 10 years."

결혼한 지 얼마나 됐어요?

"How long has it been since you got married?"

More naturally → "How long have you been married?"

More literally → "How long is the time period since you got married until now?"

The *adverb* 얼마나 means "how long," and can be used with this form when asking questions.

여기에서 일한 지 3 년이 됐어요.

"It's been three years since I worked here."

More naturally → "I've been working here for three years."

More literally → "The time that's passed since I worked here until now is three years."

수영을 한 지 두 달 넘게 됐어요.

"It's been over two months since I've swam."

More literally → "The time that's passed since I swam until now is two months."

The *adverb* 넘게 can be used with an amount of time to mean "more than" or "over."

Instead, if you want to say that it hasn't even been one year, or that it's been "less than" an amount of time, use the particle 도, and 안 되다 instead. For example:

여기에서 산 지 1 년도 안 됐어요.

"I haven't been living here for even 1 year."

More literally → "The time that's passed since I lived here until now is not even one year."

This form can be made negative with 안 되다 – "it has not been *an amount of time*."

Together with the particle 도 ("even," "also," "too"), it can mean "It has not even been *an amount of time* since *doing*."

이 자동차를 산 지 얼마 안 됐어요.

"It hasn't been that long since I bought this car."

More literally → "The time that's passed since I bought this car has not been very long."

The adverb 얼마 ("how much") can be used with 안 되다 together to mean "to not have been *very long*" or "to not have been much time."

Advanced Notes

This form can at times be vague. *Most of the time* this form is used to say that you did something (or something happened), and that action is **still** happening (or still under effect). For example, "여기에서 일한 지 3년이 됐어요" *could* be understood to mean that you worked here three years ago but no longer work here. But *most of the time* it will be used to mean that you've **been** working here for three years, and still work here this day. This will be cleared up by the context in which this form is being used. For another example, "한국어를 공부하기 시작한 지 3년이 됐어요" *could* be understood to mean that you started studying Korean three years ago, but no longer do. However, *most of the time* this will be understood to mean that you started studying Korean three years ago, and **still** study this day. Again, the context will make this clear, but most of the time it is used to show that something has happened and still is happening.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 103: Before and After

To say "before" and "after" in Korean, you'll need to know two very important words – 전 ("before") and 후 ("after"). These words can be used with both **nouns** and **verbs**. First, we'll learn how to use these with verbs.

For example, we can use this form to make the sentences "I met my friend **before** seeing a movie," or "I met my friend **after** I met my teacher."

BEFORE

Action Verb Stem + 기 전에

Take an action verb stem and attach 기, followed by 전에.

Note that when using this form, whatever happens will come in the sentence *before* what you're talking about. So in order to say "I met my friend before seeing a movie," you'd first say "before seeing a movie" followed by "I met my friend."

영화를 보기 **전에** 친구를 만났어요.

I met my friend **before** seeing a movie.

밥을 먹기 **전에** 손을 씻으세요.

Please wash your hands **before** eating.

자기 **전에** 한국어를 더 공부하고 싶어요.

I want to study Korean more **before** I sleep.

집을 나가기 **전에** 설거지를 했어요.

I did the dishes **before** I left the house.

AFTER

Action Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ 후에

Take an action verb stem and attach 은 if it ends in a consonant or ㄴ if it ends in a vowel, followed by 후에.

Note that verb stems ending with ㄹ (such as 살다) will remove the ㄹ before using this form.

살다 → 산 후에

Just like with 전에, whatever happens will come in the sentence *before* what you're talking about.

선생님을 만난 후에 친구를 만났어요.

I met my friend **after** I met my teacher.

영화를 본 후에 숙제를 했어요.

I did the homework **after** seeing a movie.

도착한 후에 전화하세요.

Please call **after** you arrive.

밥을 먹은 후에 설거지를 했어요.

I did the dishes after I ate.

BEFORE: Noun + 전에

AFTER: Noun + 후에

Both 전에 and 후에 can also be used with **nouns**, simply by placing them after the noun. The rest of the sentence will follow just like before.

These are especially useful when talking about a date or a time.

우리는 다음 주 전에 만날 수 있어요.

We can meet before next week.

3 시 후에 사장님을 만났어요.

I met my boss after 3 o'clock.

Advanced Notes:

When saying "after," you might also find the words 뒤에 or 다음에 used in place of 후에. These words can be used in the same way as 후에 when used with **verbs** (not nouns) – their meaning when used in this way is the same. Therefore the following three sentences have the same meaning.

숙제를 한 후에 친구를 만났어요.

숙제를 한 뒤에 친구를 만났어요.

숙제를 한 다음에 친구를 만났어요.

I met my friend after I did the homework.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 104: “To End up Doing”

Although I’ve previously already done an episode about how to say “to end up doing,” the form we’ll learn in this episode is more commonly used, more versatile, and more useful in general situations. For a review of the other form, 고 말다, check out “Learn Korean Ep. 75” – that form is used in the *past tense*, when trying to *explain* something, and for *unintentional* situations.

The form we’ll learn in this episode can be used to say that you *ended up* doing something or that something *ended up happening* – meaning that you *eventually* did something or that something *eventually* happened. For example, using this form you could say that you “ended up” liking a book – perhaps you didn’t at first, but *eventually* you came to like it.

Verb Stem + 게 되다

This form is most typically used with action verb stems. Take an action verb stem and attach 게, and then conjugate the verb 되다 however you’d like.

그 책을 좋아하게 됐어요.

I *ended up* liking the book.

I *eventually* liked the book.

어제 밤 3 시까지 공부를 하게 됐어요.

I *ended up* studying until 3 o’clock last night.

여자 친구를 어떻게 만나게 됐어요?

How did you *end up* meeting your girlfriend?

아마 새로운 컴퓨터를 사게 될 거예요.

Maybe I’ll *end up* buying a new computer.

I’ll *eventually* buy a new computer.

나중에 알게 될 거예요.

You'll find out later.

Eventually you'll find out later.

You'll *end up* knowing later.

알게 되다 (literally, "to end up knowing") is a common expression that means "to find out."

계속 먹게 돼요.

I keep ending up eating it.

You might say that you "end up eating" something when talking about food that you might or might not want to eat. Perhaps you wouldn't normally eat expired potato chips, but when sitting in front of the TV at 3 o'clock in the morning you just end up eating the entire bag – intentionally or unintentionally.

다시 만나게 되면 안부를 전해 주세요.

Please send my regards if you meet him again.

If you meet him again, say hi for me.

안부(를) 전하다 ("to send one's regards") is a common expression that means "to tell someone hello or hi (for someone else)."

한국에 어떻게 오게 됐어요?

How did you end up coming to Korea?

What brought you to Korea?

한국에 오게 되다 literally means "to end up coming to Korea," but "What brought you to Korea" is a more natural-sounding English translation in this sentence.

배가 아파서 수술을 하게 됐어요.

My stomach hurt so I ended up getting surgery.

저는 유튜브에서 한국어를 가르치게 됐어요.
I ended up teaching Korean on YouTube.

Advanced Notes

You might be asking yourself, "What's the difference between saying 저는 유튜브에서 한국어를 가르치게 됐어요 and saying 저는 유튜브에서 한국어를 가르쳤어요?"

Using 가르치게 됐어요 can mean that what happened may have been either intentional or unintentional (out of your control). If you were to use 가르쳤어요, it would mean that it was completely your choice – "I taught."

In addition, using the 게 되다 form has a few advantages. You can use this form to sound a bit more **polite** or **humble** when explaining something that you've done. For example, saying that you did something using 하게 됐어요 ("I ended up doing...") can sound less like bragging about it than simply saying 했어요 ("I did...") – if it's something that could be seen as bragging to begin with. This is because using 게 되다 can also mean that what happened was out of your control – so saying 하게 됐어요 sounds more like "whether I did it on purpose or not, it just ended up happening that way."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 105: "To Start" and "To Stop"

Let's talk about how to say "to start" and "to stop" doing something – specifically we'll learn how to use this form together with verbs.

To Start

Action Verb Stem + 기(를) 시작(을) 하다

Take an action verb stem and attach 기, optionally followed by the Object Marker 를. Then conjugate the verb 시작(을) 하다 ["to start"] to finish the sentence.

For example, "to start eating" would be 먹기 시작(을) 하다, from the verb 먹다 ["to eat"]. Here are some more examples:

이미 저녁을 먹기 시작했어요.
I already started eating dinner.

내일부터 한국어를 배우기 시작할 거예요.
From tomorrow I'll start learning Korean.

어제부터 다이어트를 하기 시작했어요.
I started dieting from yesterday.

지금 자동차를 만들기 시작하고 싶어요.
Now I want to start making a car.

To Stop

그만 + Action Verb

Attach the adverb 그만 directly before an action verb, and then conjugate it.

For example, "to stop eating" would be 그만 먹다. Here are some more examples:

너무 배불러서 그만 먹고 싶어요.
I want to stop eating because I'm too full.

그만하세요.
Stop it.
Stop doing it.

In addition, 그만하다 can also be used by itself to mean "to stop doing."

프랑스어 공부를 그만했어요.
I stopped studying French.

Alternatively, 그만두다 can be used in the same way as 그만하다. 그만두다 also means "to stop," but it can even be used to mean "to quit" depending on the context.

프랑스어 공부를 그만뒀어요.
I stopped studying French.

우리 이제 그만 만나요.
Let's stop meeting now.
We'll stop meeting from now.

다른 남자들을 그만 보세요.
Stop looking at other guys.

Advanced Notes

Some beginners mistakenly use the verb 멈추다 ("to stop") when trying to say "to stop" doing something using a verb. 멈추다 also means "to stop," but it's only used when talking about motion or operation (such as a machine).

To say "to stop" **moving**, use 멈추다.

기차가 멈췄어요.
The train stopped.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 106: Adverbs

An adverb is a word that describes a verb – how a verb happens, or in what way a verb is, for example. Adverbs can also be used to describe other adverbs.

For example, in English you might run “quickly” or dance “happily.” Adverbs in English can often end with “ly” but there are plenty that don’t. In Korean, many adverbs end with “게” but there are also many that don’t.

Descriptive Verb Stem + 게

To make an adverb in Korean from a descriptive verb, take the descriptive verb stem and attach 게. Let’s look at an example.

도착했어요.

I arrived.

We can add an adverb to describe **how** we arrived. For example, we could use the descriptive verb 안전하다 [“to be safe”] to say that we arrived **safely** at our destination.

안전하게 도착했어요.

I arrived safely.

Here’s another example:

지금 웃고 있어요.

I’m smiling now.

We can add an adverb to describe **how** we are smiling. For example, we could use the descriptive verb 행복하다 [“to be happy”] to say that we’re smiling **happily**.

지금 행복하게 웃고 있어요.

I’m smiling happily now.

김치를 맵게 만들고 싶어요.

I want to make the kimchi spicy.

맵게 comes from 맵다 ["to be spicy"].

철수 씨는 빠르게 말해요.

Chul-soo speaks quickly.

빠르게 comes from 빠르다 ["to be quick"].

Unique Korean Adverbs

Not all adverbs in Korean end with 게. For example, instead of 빠르게 we could also say 빨리, and both mean "quickly." In addition, 빨리 can also be used to mean "hurry up" or "right away" when used together with a command. However, 빠르게 can only be used to mean "quickly."

철수 씨는 빨리 말해요.

Chul-soo speaks quickly.

김치를 더 주세요.

Please give me more kimchi.

더 is another adverb that means "more." Its opposite is 덜, meaning "less."

너무 맛있어요.

It's so delicious!

너무 is an adverb that means "too much," but in casual usage it just means "so much."

저는 한국어를 잘해요.

I speak Korean well.

잘 is a very common adverb that means “well,” such as to say that you do something well. It can also be used to mean “often,” among other things.

이미 많이 먹었어요.

I ate a lot already.

많이 means “a lot,” but is an adverb – it needs to be used directly before a verb. To say that there is a lot of something, simply conjugate the descriptive verb 많다 [“to be a lot”].

To Use 게?

Not all adverbs made with 게 will sound natural or be commonly used. For example, to say that something moves **slowly** (from the descriptive verb 천천하다), use 천천히 [“slowly”] – not 천천하게.

Many descriptive verbs ending with 하다 can also become adverbs by changing 하다 to 히 instead of 하게. For example, 안전하다 [“to be safe”] can become either 안전하게 or 안전히 – both mean “safely.” However, the only way to know whether the 히 or 하게 version is more commonly used for each descriptive verb is by listening to how Koreans speak and learning each one separately. There are no tricks to learning adverbs, and the best way is to learn them one at a time.

Advanced Notes

A commonly used adverb is 재미있게, which means “entertainingly” and comes from 재미(가) 있다. It can be used to mean that you’re doing something while **enjoying** it.

영화를 재미있게 봤어요.

I enjoyed watching the movie.

Another common adverb is 맛있게, which means “deliciously” and comes from 맛(이) 있다. It can be used to mean that you’re **eating** something and **enjoying** it.

아이스크림을 맛있게 먹었어요.
I enjoyed (eating) the ice cream.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 107: 아니고 vs 말고

아니고 and 말고 can both translate as “not,” and therefore are often confused – but each is used in a different situation and the two words can’t be swapped.

아니고 and 말고

아니고 comes from the **descriptive verb** 아니다 [“to not be”]. It’s the opposite of 이다 [“to be”].

말고 comes from the **action verb** 말다 [“to stop,” “to not do something”]. You’ll often find 말다 being used in the ~지 말다 form when telling someone “Don’t (do something).” For example, it’s the same form used in the expression 하지 마세요 (“Don’t do it.”).

Example 1

Only one of these sentences is correct:

이거 **말고** 그거 주세요.

이거 **아니고** 그거 주세요.

Not this, give me that please.

Please give me that, not this.

말고 comes from 말다 and means “don’t do... but...” In the first sentence, 이거 말고 means “don’t do this, but 그거 주세요 (“please give me that.”).” This sounds natural, because you’re telling the other person, “No, not this thing. Give me that.” Or it can be like saying, “Don’t do this, but give me that.” The first sentence is correct.

아니고 comes from 아니다 and means “it’s not, and...” So in this sentence 이거 아니고 would mean “It’s not that, and...” This would be like telling someone, “It’s not this. Give me that.” This would sound awkward, because the two parts of the sentence sound unrelated.

Example 2

Only one of these sentences is correct:

영국 사람이 **아니고** 미국 사람이에요.
영국 사람 **말고** 미국 사람이에요.
I'm not British, but I'm American.

The first sentence means "I am not a British person," because it uses **아니고** from **아니다**.

The second sentence means "Don't a British person," so unless you're asking for someone to hand over a different person (... maybe your friend set you up on a blind date with a British person?), this sentence is already wrong and sounds awkward.

Example 3

Both of these examples are correct.

물이 **아니고** 사이다예요.
It's not water, it's soda.
It's soda, not water.

물 **말고** 사이다를 주세요.
Don't give me water, give me soda.
Give me soda, not water.

Conclusion

Here's another tip. Think of 아니고 as meaning this: "You're wrong, it's not that." And think of 말고 as meaning this: "No, stop. Don't do that. Let's ignore that."

Also, remember to use the Subject Marker (이/가) together with 아니다, but not with 말다.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 108: I hope, I wish

Disclaimer: Previously I made a lesson about how to say 'should' in Korean (episode 58 in this series). The form we'll learn in this lesson will look slightly similar, but is not the same form.

Verb Stem + (으)면 좋겠다

This form can be used to say that you "hope" or "wish" that something happens. Literally, since this form uses the (으)면 form ("if" and "when") and 좋겠다 ("it would be good") it means "It would be good if (something happens)."

To use this form, take a verb stem (action verb or descriptive verb) and attach 으면 if it ends in a consonant, or attach 면 if it ends in a vowel. Then conjugate the verb 좋겠다, which originally comes from 좋다 meaning "to be good." This could become 좋겠어요, 좋겠는데, or 좋겠죠, among many other possible conjugations. Here are some examples:

빨리 하면 좋겠어요.

I hope you'll do it quickly.

다 잘되면 좋겠어요.

I hope it all goes well.

다 is an adverb that means "all."

다음 주에 다시 일을 할 수 있으면 좋겠어요.

I hope I can work again next week.

내일 안 더우면 좋겠어요.

I hope tomorrow isn't hot.

Notice how 덥다 becomes 더우면. Verb stems ending with ㅁ will remove the ㅁ and add 우 whenever using the (으)면 form. Here's one more example of this.

김치가 매우면 좋겠어요.
I hope the kimchi is spicy.

Present Tense or Past Tense?

This form can be used with both present tense and past tense verb stems. For example, you could use 오면 or 왔으면 from the verb 오다. Both the present tense and past tense verb stems will have the same meaning, but using the past tense shows a bit more of a **stronger** hope that it would happen.

빨리 봄이 오면 좋겠어요.
빨리 봄이 왔으면 좋겠어요.
I hope that spring comes quickly.

저를 도와주면 좋겠어요.
저를 도와줬으면 좋겠어요.
I hope you'll help me.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 109: How to Use ~던

There are many grammar forms that use the **던** ending, and this lesson won't attempt to cover all of them. This lesson will talk about the most commonly used ~**던** endings, how to conjugate them, and what they mean.

Since ~**던** can be used in so many ways, this lesson is most appropriate only for intermediate (or advanced) Korean learners – it is not a topic that most beginners will be able to use immediately.

Descriptive Verb Stem + **던**

One of the most common places to find **던** being used is after a descriptive verb stem.

Normally, when changing a descriptive verb to an adjective (to describe a noun), you'd attach **은** or **ㄴ** after the verb stem, with some exceptions. For a refresher on how to do this, check out episode 70 of this series. Here's an example using the verb **작다** ["to be small"].

작은 집
a small house

But what if we wanted to say not that the house **is** small, but that the house **was** small (past tense). For example, how could we say, "a house that was small?" Of course we could just rearrange the sentence and say, **집이 작았어요** ["The house was small."], but doing this doesn't let us describe the house more. If we could say "a house that was small," then we could also say "*I bought* a house that was small *and expanded it*," or even say "The house that was small *is now gone*." We'll need to use **던** to make the adjective into the **past tense**.

Past Tense Verb Stem + **던**

To make a past tense adjective from a descriptive verb, take its past tense stem (this will always end with **ㅁ** at the bottom of the last syllable) and attach **던**. For **작다**, that would be **작았다** → **작았**.

작았던 집
a house that was small

Now we can say what we want, but to be fair speaking this way in Korean isn't always the most natural way (or in English, for that matter). Make sure that if you're using a past tense adjective like this that it's being used in an appropriate situation. Saying "There is a house that was small" could sound very awkward, but saying "I bought a house that was small" sounds natural in both English and Korean.

Past Tense Adjective + 것 같다

Once we've conjugated a past tense adjective with **던**, we can use it together with the **것 같다** form ["think"] to say that we think something **was** a certain way – we're no longer limited to thinking about things in the present tense. Using **던** with the **것 같다** form is extremely common, and natural. Here's an example:

김밥이 **맛있는** 것 같아요.

I think the kimbap **is** delicious.

김밥이 **맛있었던** 것 같아요.

I think the kimbap **was** delicious.

Here are some more examples:

작년이 더 **추웠던** 것 같아요.

I think last year **was** colder.

시험이 아주 **어려웠던** 것 같아요.

I think the test **was** very difficult.

미국 **사람이었던** 것 같아요.

I think they **were** American.

Although not an exception to the rules, 이다 ["to be"] becomes **이었던** after a consonant and **였던** after a vowel.

이미 했던 것 같아요.
I think I already did it.

Adjectives can also be made from action verbs. For a refresher on this concept, review episode 91 of this series. Actives made this way can have one more important use – in addition to being usable with **것 같다** – and we'll talk about that use next.

Action Verb Stem + **던**

Take an action verb stem and attach **던**. This gives the verb the meaning of “had done” or “used to do.” In addition, this action verb stem can even be in the past tense; but whether it's in the past tense or present tense, the meaning is mostly similar (with one small exception we'll talk about). Here's an example of a regular present tense adjective, a present tense adjective using **던**, and a past tense adjective using **던**.

제가 좋아**하는** 음식을 먹었어요.
I ate food that I **like**.

제가 좋아**했던** 음식을 먹었어요.
제가 좋아**하던** 음식을 먹었어요.
I ate food that I **had liked**.
I ate food that I **used to like**.

Here are some more examples:

제가 원**했던** 거예요.
It's what I had wanted.
It's what I used to want.

이게 일요일마다 입**었던** 셔츠예요?
Is this the shirt you had worn every Sunday?
Is this the shirt you used to wear every Sunday?

제가 옛날에 살던 집이 이제 없어요.
The house that I had lived in is now gone.
The house that I used to live in is now gone.

제가 다니던 학교예요.
It's the school I had attended.
It's the school I used to attend.

Past Tense Action Verb Stem + 던? Present Tense Action Verb Stem + 던?

While both of these forms mean "had done" or "used to," they're slightly unique.

Using a present tense action verb stem with **던** means that you used to do something, but also that you may or may not still be doing that. To clarify, this doesn't mean it **is** something you're still doing, but it **could** be.

Using a past tense action verb stem with **던** means that you used to do something, but that you are **no longer** doing it.

Here's an example of each tense.

제가 **다니던** 학교예요.
It's the school I used to attend (and it's possible that I might still attend it).

제가 **다녔던** 학교예요.
It's the school I used to attend (but I no longer go there).

When you don't specifically want or need to make this distinction, use either tense with **던**.

Advanced Notes 던데(요) and 다던데(요)

Here are two more common forms that use **던**.

던데(요) can be added to the end of a sentence (specifically, to the end of a **present tense verb stem** at the end of a sentence) to add the meaning of "expecting to hear a reply to your statement." In this way, using ~던데(요) at the end of a sentence is like asking a question, but without raising the intonation at the end of your sentence or using a question mark.

그 드라마를 보고 있어요.

I'm watching that drama.

그 드라마를 보고 있던데요.

I'm watching that drama (and what do you think of that?).

매운 김치를 좋아해요.

He likes spicy kimchi.

매운 김치를 좋아하던데요.

He likes spicy kimchi (but do you think differently?).

When used together with the Plain Form in **quotations**, 던데(요) becomes 다던데(요).

매운 김치를 좋아한다고 해요.

He says he likes spicy kimchi.

매운 김치를 좋아한다던데요.

He says he likes spicy kimchi (and what do you think of that?).

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 110: “Using” and “As” | (으)로 and (으)로서

The (으)로 particle has several meanings, and this lesson will cover two of the most common ones. We'll also discuss a similar particle, (으)로서.

One of the meanings of (으)로 has been covered in a previous episode. (으)로 can be used to mean “toward” when used with a verb that shows *movement* (such as 가다, 오다, etc.). To learn about that usage, watch “Learn Korean Episode 68.”

Noun + 으로 “Using”

(으)로 can be used to mean “using.” For example, it can be used to say “using a pencil.” Depending on the sentence, the translation can change widely – from “by” to “with” to “using” to “out of” to “for” and other ways.

To use it, take a noun and attach 으로 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach 로 if it ends in a *vowel*.

펜으로 “with a pen”

자동차로 “by car”

연필로 “with a pencil”

Note that nouns ending in ㄹ will also add 로 to the end.

The (으)로 particle shows what sort of *method, material, machine, tool, channel, or means* by which you do something. Here are some examples.

책상을 나무로 만들었어요.

I made a desk out of wood.

Since (으)로 shows the *means* by which you do something, you can also think of this sentence as meaning, “I made a desk *using* wood.”

핸드폰으로 철수 씨한테 전화했어요.

I called Chul-soo on my cell phone.

Using (으)로 here shows that the cell phone is the *means* by which you made a phone call.

이메일로 보내주세요.

Please send it by email.

In this sentence, email is the *method* of sending something.

비행기로 한국까지 가고 싶어요.

I want to go to Korea by plane.

Here, the plane is the *machine* (vehicle) that you'll take to get to Korea.

손으로 종이를 접었어요.

I folded the paper with my hands.

In this sentence, you're *using* your hands to fold the paper.

한국어로 설명할 수 있어요.

I can explain it in Korean.

Here, the Korean language (한국어) is the *method* by which you're explaining something.

빌리의 유튜브 채널로 한국어를 배우고 있어요.

I'm learning Korean through Billy's YouTube channel.

However, the 으로 particle can also be used in a few other ways too. Let's talk about one more.

Noun + 으로 "As"

The (으)로 particle can also mean "as" (also "as it is," "for," or "in the role of"). For example, you could say "I got a car *as* a gift," or "I was hired *as* a teacher." Here are some examples.

이거 선물로 받았어요.

I got this as a present.

(Or...) I got this for a present.

철수 씨를 친구로 생각해요.

I think of Chul-soo as a friend.

(Or...) I think of Chul-soo in the role of a friend.

어제 저녁으로 피자를 먹었어요.

Yesterday I ate pizza for dinner.

(Or...) Yesterday, I ate pizza as dinner.

스테이크를 레어로 주세요.

Please give me the steak rare.

(Or...) Please give me the steak **as** rare.

이거 라지로 있어요?

Do you have this in a large?

(Or...) Do you have this as a large?

선생님으로 고용됐어요.

I was hired as a teacher.

Before going further, I should specify that this (으)로 particle can only be used to mean "as" when it's modifying (affecting or describing) a verb. It cannot be used when the noun (used before 으로) is what you're talking about in a sentence.

For example, if the sentence is about you "as a teacher," then you could not use 선생님으로 to say "As a teacher." Starting a sentence with 선생님으로, followed by talking about your experiences as a teacher, would be grammatically incorrect (and sound awkward).

Again, the (으)로 particle can only be used when it's modifying a verb. Therefore, you could be hired as a teacher, work as a teacher, or do anything as a teacher using the (으)로 particle. But you *couldn't* use the (으)로 particle to say something like "As a teacher, you shouldn't do that." To say that, you'll need a different particle.

Noun + (으)로서

To say "as a teacher" or "as a person who likes languages" or "as a friend" when that's what your sentence is about, use the particle (으)로서. It works the same way as (으)로, just with 서 added to the end – but it is used whenever it is not modifying (affecting or describing) a verb.

The (으)로서 particle is used to show in what *capacity* or *position* that you're doing something (for example, what job you have or what your rank is). You can think of it as meaning "in the capacity of" or "in the position of."

However, be careful as this particle is not too commonly used in spoken Korean as it sounds a tad formal; it's good to know, but it can sound awkward when used on its own. Here are two examples.

언어를 좋아하는 사람으로서 한국어는 그렇게 어렵지 않아요.

As a person who likes languages, Korean isn't that difficult.

(Or...) In the capacity/position of a person who likes languages, Korean isn't that difficult.

친구로서 하는 말인데 다단계 하지 마.

I'm saying this as a friend, but don't do multi-level marketing.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 111: Colors

The Korean word for "color" is 색 or 색깔 – either is fine.

In order to properly learn about colors in Korean, we first have to talk about nouns, adjectives, and even *verbs*.

Colors in English

English colors are simple; colors can be used in a sentence as both an adjective (describing a noun) and as a noun (like an object or a "thing").

For example, "red" can be used as an adjective ("red car") or a noun ("I like red.")

If you learn the name of a color in English, you can use it anywhere – and there's only one word to memorize. "Red" is just "red." "Dark red" is just "dark red."

Color Verbs in Korean

Some colors you'll find in Korean are nouns, while others are actually verbs (you'll see those verbs conjugated into adjectives too).

First, let's look at a color that's a verb – specifically, a descriptive verb (a verb that is used to describe something).

빨강다 means "to be red," and it's a (descriptive) verb.

Since it's a verb, if we want to say "red car" then we'll need to get the adjective "red." To do that we can conjugate 빨강다 as 빨간 – this is now an adjective.

빨간 차

"red car"

Or we can make it into a complete sentence by conjugating 이다 (“to be”) at the end.

빨간 차예요.
“It’s a red car.”

But here, some people may wonder “Can I just learn 빨간 instead of 빨강다?” No, because you might not always want to conjugate 빨강다 as 빨간. You might want to use it as an adjective (빨간), but other times you might want to use it at the end of a sentence to describe something that you’re talking about.

For example, instead of just saying 빨간 차 (“red car”), you might want to say this.

차가 빨개요.
“The car is red.”

Or you might want to conjugate 빨강다 to the past tense (among other conjugations).

차가 빨갠어요.
“The car was red.”

빨강다 conjugates in the 요 form as 빨개(요). Note this conjugation – color descriptive verbs will end with ㅎ when conjugating, and verbs with ㅎ will add the vowel sound ㅐ to the end when conjugating the 요 form (such as in 빨개요).

Because it depends on how you want to use it, it’s important to learn the original descriptive verb for each color.

Color Nouns in Korean

Not all colors in Korean are descriptive verbs, and many are just nouns (which are easier to use and don’t need to conjugate).

초록색 means “green” and it’s a noun. Here’s an example.

초록색을 좋아해요.
"I like green."

Color nouns in Korean can also be used as adjectives, or at the end of sentences, but without any changes or conjugating.

초록색 차
"green car"

차가 초록색이에요.
"The car is green."

Common Colors in Korean

Let's learn some of the most common colors in Korean. If a definition starts with "to be" or ends with ~다 you can know that it's a descriptive verb and will (probably) need to be conjugated. If a word ends with 색 then you can know that it's a noun, and can be used as-is.

빨강다 "to be red"

초록색 "green"

파랑다 "to be blue"

주황색 "orange"

노랑다 "to be yellow"

보라색 "purple"

하얗다 "to be white"

회색 "gray"

갈색 "brown"

In Korean there can also be more than one way to say each color. I don't mean "blue," "light blue," and "dark blue." I mean "blue" as a noun, adjective, or descriptive verb.

You can make another form for each descriptive verb color by taking the verb and conjugating it to an adjective, and then attaching 색 – now you have a noun form of the descriptive verb which can be used anywhere.

For example, 빨강다 can become 빨간 (which is only an adjective), or 빨간색 (which is a noun). 빨간색 can therefore be used as a noun, or as an adjective as we've learned.

빨간색을 안 좋아해요.

"I don't like red."

We can also use 빨간색 just like 빨간, since 빨간색 is a noun – both ways are natural and common.

빨간 차

빨간색 차

"red car"

Some of you might be wondering "Can we change every descriptive verb into a noun by adding 색, and just ignore the original descriptive verb form? These seem much easier to work with." Yes, you can do that when making your own sentences, and this is useful especially if you're still a beginner. It's also less stressful if you're learning about colors for your first time. And best of all, you won't be incorrect.

However, you will still see and hear all of the forms used (빨강다, 빨간, 빨간색, and others), so you should still be aware the descriptive verb forms exist and know how to use them – even if you don't use them yourself yet. This way, if someone says 파래요 you can know that it came from 파랗다, without having to memorize a new conjugation separately for every descriptive verb color.

Example Sentences

파란 새가 아주 예뻐요.

"The blue bird is very pretty."

저의 머리가 까매요.

"My hair is black."

저는 까만 머리가 좋아요.

"I like black hair."

하얀색 티셔츠를 사고 싶어요.

"I want to buy a white T-shirt."

노란 병아리가 5 마리 있어요.

"There are 5 yellow chicks."

원숭이 엉덩이는 빨개요.

"The monkey's butt is red."

우리 엄마 손은 작고 하얘요.

"My mom's hands are small and white."

초록색 가방을 찾고 있어요.

"I'm looking for a green bag."

For the color black, there are a few options. 까맣다 ("to be black") conjugates to 까만 or 까만색 – this is often used for natural things such as animals (black cat) or nature (black sky). 검정색 ("black") is another possibility – this is often used for inanimate black things (black car). However, both colors are used commonly for any situation, so learn both.

Conclusion

This is not a complete list of all the colors in Korean – there are more words for each color, and more colors. Hopefully this will give you a good introduction to how colors work, so you can learn new ones on your own more easily.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 112: Irregular Verbs

When Korean learners think of "irregular verb" conjugations, many (perhaps most) people first think of verb stems ending with ㅁ.

For example, here are ㅁ form present tense conjugations of verb stems ending with ㅁ.

춡다 ("to be cold") → 추워요

곱다 ("to be beautiful," "to be nice") → 곱와요

입다 ("to wear") → 입어요

Although all verb stems ending with ㅁ might appear irregular at first glance, the majority follow regular rules.

Verb Stems Ending with ㅁ

If an **action verb** stem ends with ㅁ, attach 아(요) if the last vowel is ㅏ or ㅑ. Or, attach 어(요) if the last vowel is anything else. This is exactly like conjugating most verbs in Korean.

잡다 ("to catch") → 잡아요

접다 ("to fold") → 접어요

If a **descriptive verb** stem ends with ㅁ, remove the ㅁ and attach 우. This will become 워(요) in the present tense, 왔어(요) in the past tense, and 올 거예요 in the future tense (among other forms).

덥다 ("to be hot") → 더워요

But with any rule, there are exceptions. Here are the most common ones.

굽다 ("to bake") → 구워요

눅다 ("to lie down") → 누워요

돕다 ("to help") → 도와요

줍다 ("to pick up") → 주워요

곱다 ("to be beautiful," "to be nice") → 고와요

Of these, 돕다 and 곱다 are not commonly used by themselves, so you only need to focus on the remaining three exceptions.

Verb Stems Ending with ㅎ

For these verbs, remove the ㅎ and attach the sound ㅁ.

그렇다 ("to be so") → 그래요

까맣다 ("to be black") → 까매요

However, 하얗다 ("to be white") becomes 하얘요 – this is because 하야 combines with the ㅁ sound to become 하얘.

Verb Stems Ending with ㄹ

Whenever a verb stem ending with ㄹ is followed by ㄴ, ㅂ, or ㅅ, remove the ㄹ. Otherwise, keep the ㄹ.

For example, 길다 ("to be long") becomes 긴 (ㄴ) as an adjective, 갑니다 (ㅂ) in the 니다 form, and 기세요 (ㅅ) in the honorific form.

Verb Stems Ending with ㅈ

Some verb stems ending with ㅈ are irregular, while others are not.

For the irregular ones, the ㅈ will change to become ㅊ.

듣다 ("to listen") → 들어요

걷다 ("to walk") → 걸어요

While other verbs will conjugate normally.

믿다 ("to believe") → 믿어요

받다 ("to receive") → 받아요

Here are the most common irregular verbs ending in ㅁ.

듣다 ("to listen") → 들어요

걷다 ("to walk") → 걸어요

깨달다 ("to realize") → 깨달아요

실다 ("to load") → 실어요

묻다 ("to ask") → 물어요

Verb Stems Ending with ㅅ

For most verbs that end with ㅅ, remove the ㅅ.

낫다 ("to get better," "to be preferable") → 나아요

For other verbs, conjugate them normally.

웃다 ("to smile," "to laugh") → 웃어요

씻다 ("to wash") → 씻어요

Here are the most common exceptions to learn.

낫다 ("to get better," "to be preferable") → 나아요

짓다 ("to build") → 지어요

붓다 ("to swell") → 부어요

잇다 ("to connect") → 이어요

젓다 ("to stir") → 저어요

Verb Stems Ending with 르

For these verbs stems, remove the — vowel at the bottom. Then copy the ㄹ to the bottom of the previous syllable. Finally, attach 아(요) or 어(요) as usual.

For example, the verb stem of 모르다 (“to not know”) is 모르. Removing — we get 모르. Copying ㄹ to the bottom of the previous syllable gives us 몰르. Attaching 아(요) – since 몰 has ㅏ – gives us 몰라요.

For another example, the verb stem of 부르다 (“to sing”) is 부르. Removing — we get 부르. Copying ㄹ to the bottom of the previous syllable gives us 불르. Attaching 어(요) – since 부 doesn’t have ㅏ or ㅑ – gives us 불러요.

An exception is the verb 따르다 (“to follow”), which becomes 따라요 without copying the ㄹ.

Verb Stems Ending with —

For these verbs, most of the time we simply remove —. Then we replace it with 아(요) or 어(요) as usual.

For example, the verb stem of 기쁘다 (“to be happy”) is 기쁘. Removing — we get 기뻐. Attaching 어(요) – since 기 doesn’t have ㅏ or ㅑ – gives us 기뻐요.

For another example, the verb stem of 고프다 (“to be hungry”) is 고프. Removing — we get 고프. Attaching 아(요) – since 고프 has ㅑ – gives us 고프아요.

Here are two common exceptions.

잠그다 (“to lock”) → 잠가요

담그다 (“to soak”) → 담가요

Keep in mind that these two verbs are often conjugated *incorrectly* as 잠귀요 and 담귀요.

Common Irregular Verbs

Here are a few more common irregular verbs.

이다 ("to be") conjugates to **이에요** when used after a consonant, and **예요** when used after a vowel.

하다 ("to do") conjugates to **해요**.

되다 ("to become") conjugates to **돼요**, although occasionally in writing it can also become **되어요**.

Conclusion

Most verbs are regular, and once you learn the rules (and the few exceptions) you can conjugate any verb in Korean.

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 113: (으)나 마나 and 봤자 “No Matter”

Both (으)나 마나 and 봤자 are intermediate level grammar forms, and are not recommended for beginners. They have similar translations, but work differently and have different rules.

Action Verb Stem + (으)나 마다

This grammar form is used to show that the result of something (an action verb) does not matter – no matter what you do.

Some possible ways to translate it are “It would be a waste of time (to do verb),” or “You shouldn’t bother (doing verb),” or “It’s no use (to do verb).”

To use this form, take an action verb stem and attach 으나 마나 if it ends in a consonant, or attach 나 마나 if it ends in a vowel.

For example, 하다 would become 하나 마나, and 읽다 would become 읽으나 마나.

Note that this form is only used with positive action verbs – not with negative verbs (such as ones using 안 or 지 않다). This is because the meaning would sound awkward; therefore, 안 하나 마나 would be like saying “It would be a waste of time to not do...” or “It’s no use to not do...” and would be incorrect.

Here are some examples.

어차피 제가 그 파티에 가나 마나 아무도 모를 거예요.

Either way, even if I go to the party nobody will know.

This example means that even if I go, nobody will know whether I went or not. Therefore, I shouldn’t bother going, or it’s no use going, or it would just be a waste of time for me to go to the party.

그 책은 읽으나 마나 도움이 안 될 거예요.

Even if you read that book it won’t be helpful.

The most common way to use this form is when followed by 이다 (“to be”) – here as 예요. It does not need to be followed by a complete sentence. When used in this way, it has the meaning of “Don’t bother doing (verb),” or “It’s no use to do (verb),” or “There’s no point to do (verb).” The next grammar form 봤자 can also be used in this way, although it is less common than with (으)나 마나.

그렇게 하면 하나 마나예요.

It doesn’t make a difference if you do that.

이런 날씨에는 우산을 쓰나 마나예요.

It’s no use using an umbrella in this weather.

You might say this sentence if it’s raining so much that using an umbrella wouldn’t make any difference – “it’s useless” to use an umbrella.

Verb Stem + (아/어/etc.) 봤자

This grammar form is also used to show that something does not matter. And it’s used to say that something is a waste of time, no matter what you do or no matter what something is (when used with descriptive verbs).

To use this form, take a verb (action verb or descriptive verb) and conjugate it to the 요 form as usual – then attach 봤자.

For example, 하다 would become 해 봤자, and 읽다 would become 읽어 봤자.

This form originally comes from the regular 보다 grammar form (meaning “to try,” or “to do [and see how it goes]”). Therefore, 해 봤자 literally means “Even if you do...,” and 읽어 봤자 literally means “Even if you read....”

For another example, let’s use the descriptive verb 맛있다 (“to be delicious”) – 맛있어 봤자 literally means “Even if it’s delicious....”

Here are some examples.

지금 가 봤자 늦었을 거예요.

Even if you go now, you'll be late.

Note that 늦다 ("to be late") is often conjugated in the past tense to mean that you're late for something – here it's 늦었을 거예요 (literally, "You will/would have been late.") and not 늦을 거예요.

In addition, the 봤자 form is commonly used together with the 것이다 future tense form. This usage is for assuming that something would have happened, and means "Even if I had done (verb), something will happen."

제 방은 정리를 해 봤자 금방 더러워질 거예요.

Even if I organize my room, it'll get dirty right away.

비싼 옷을 입어봤자 티도 안 나요.

It doesn't make a difference if I wear expensive clothes, because nobody can tell.

티(가) 나다 means that something is apparent or obvious, or that something is easy to notice, or easy to tell.

감자가 맛있어 봤자 얼마나 맛있겠어요?

Even if the potatoes taste good, I mean, how good could they be?

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 114: 다시피 “As you...”

This lesson will talk about the grammar ending 다시피, as well as the form 다시피 하다.

Action Verb Stem + 다시피

You can use this form to say “as you do something,” or “as you do (verb).” However, this form does not mean “as” as in “while” – for that, use (으)면서 or 동안, among other forms.

An example of this form would be saying “As you know...” or “As you see...,” but it has a few more uses too.

To use this form, attach it directly to an action verb stem – this can either be in the **present tense** or the **past tense**.

For example, 하다 in the present tense with this form would become 하다시피, and in the past tense would become 했다시피.

Here are some examples.

알다시피 이걸 내가 산 컴퓨터야.

As you know, this is the computer I bought.

보시다시피 고양이가 저보다 더 커졌어요.

As you can see, the cat got bigger than me.

In this example 다시피 is used with the honorific form of 보다 (“to see”), here as 보시다.

들었다시피 우리 만나고 있어요.

As you’ve heard, we’re dating.

In this example 다시피 is used with the past tense form of 듣다 ("to listen"), here as 들었다.

Note that 만나다 ("to meet") is also used between couples to refer to "dating." This is because if two people are "meeting" regularly then they are "seeing each other."

저번에 말했다시피 BTS 는 정말로 인기가 많다고.

As I told you last time, BTS is really popular.

In this example 다시피 is used with the past tense form of 말하다 ("to say," "to speak," "to tell"), here as 말했다.

Action Verb Stem + 다시피 하다

다시피 can also be used together with 하다 ("to do"), but has a different meaning.

When used in this way, it means "almost" or "nearly" doing something *on purpose* or *unintentionally*.

However, note that this is not the same as the 뻔하다 grammar form, which is used when you almost or nearly do something *unintentionally*. For example, 뻔하다 could be used if you almost fell down, since that would be unintentional. For more examples of 뻔하다, check out "Learn Korean Ep. 41."

다시피 하다 is often used together with the adverb 거의 ("almost," "nearly"), which adds **emphasis** to the meaning of "almost" or "nearly" in the sentence.

Here are some examples.

너무 배가 고파서 2 인분을 혼자서 다 먹다시피 했어요.

I was so hungry that I almost ate two servings completely by myself.

한동안은 운동을 매일 하다시피 했어요.

For a while I almost exercised every day.

요즘은 비가 너무 많이 와서 거의 집에만 있다시피 하고 있어요.

Lately it's raining so much that I'm almost only staying at home.

있다 ("to exist") can also translate as "to stay" when talking about where you're **located**.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 115: 다 못해 “Extreme”

다 못해 is an intermediate level grammar form, so I only recommend learning it if you can already hold a full conversation (but don't let me tell you what to do).

It's used to show that something is extreme, but its translation can vary depending on the sentence it's used in.

Present Tense Verb Stem + 다 못해

다 못해 is used to show that what comes before it is extreme (an action or a situation) or an extreme amount, and therefore can't go on any longer or can't maintain something any longer. The key to understanding this form is that it's only used when talking about *extremes*.

To use this form, take a **present tense verb stem** and attach 다 못해, then complete the rest of the sentence. 다 못해 is a sentence connector, and therefore isn't used at the end of a sentence by itself.

Note that a present tense verb stem with 다 will appear the exact same as a regular unconjugated verb.

For example, 하다 (“to do”) will become 하다 못해, and 먹다 (“to eat”) will become 먹다 못해.

Here are some example sentences.

너무 행복하다 못해 눈물이 났어요.

I was so happy that I cried.

When used with a descriptive verb you can think of the 다 못해 form as having a similar meaning as the adverb 너무 (“so much,” “too,” “too much”) with the grammar form ~서 (showing a cause and effect). Here, saying 행복하다 못해 is like saying 너무 행복해서 – “because I am too happy....” Therefore, saying 행복하다 못해 means that you were so happy, that it was extreme, and that you couldn't go on any longer (so you cried).

개미를 괴롭히는 아이들을 보다 못해 소리를 질렀어요.

I couldn't stand looking at the kids torturing the ants, so I yelled at them.

When used with an action verb you can think of the 다 못해 form as meaning that you can no longer do that verb, or that it's impossible to keep doing that verb – because it is extreme.

이 사탕은 너무 달다 못해 입이 아파요.

This candy is so sweet, my mouth hurts.

Here, 달다 못해 means that the candy is sweet – to an extreme amount – and that you can no longer keep eating it and your mouth even hurts.

추위를 참다못해 해외 여행을 갔어요.

I couldn't stand the extreme cold, so I went on a trip abroad.

Here, 참다못해 means that you can no longer endure the cold, and that it's extreme – so much that you left the country to go on a trip abroad. Note that it's written without a space.

배가 고프다 못해 기절할 것 같아요.

I'm so hungry, I think I'm going to faint.

Here, 배가 고프다 못해 means that you're so (extremely) hungry and it can't go on any longer, so you think you're going to faint.

친구들이랑 시험 공부로 밤을 새우다 못해 다 같이 좀비가 되어 버렸어요. I stayed up all night with my friends studying for tests (and we can't stay up any longer), and we all became zombies.

Here, 밤(을) 새우다 ("to stay up all night") with 다 못해 means that you can no longer keep staying up – since you stayed up all night – and that staying awake all night was extreme. Therefore, you became a sleep deprived zombie.

어려운 한국어 문법을 공부하다 못해 집 밖으로 뛰어 나갔어요.

I was studying difficult Korean grammar (and I couldn't any longer), and I ran outside my house.

Here, 공부하다 못해 means you studied an extreme amount, and were no longer able to keep studying. Therefore, you ran outside of your mouth.

그 친구는 PC 방을 거의 매일 가다 못해 이제는 거기서 살다시피 하고 있어요.

That friend goes to the internet café so much, nearly every day, and now he's almost living there.

Here, 가다 못해 means that your friend goes to the internet café so much, that it's extreme – so extreme that it can't continue any longer. In fact, it's like he's almost living there. For a review of 다시피 하다 (here, as 살다시피 하고 있어요), check out "Learn Korean Ep. 114."

This doesn't mean that your friend is unable to go the internet café anymore, but just that they're going there so much that it's an extreme amount.

Advanced Notes

Here are some tips for more advanced learners.

1) This 다 못해 form is originally from 다(가) 못하여 – or 다(가) 못해 in more modern usage.

That means the literal meaning of this form is **Verb + 다(가)**, or “while (doing verb)” something interrupted (doing verb). This 다(가) form is also used as another way to say “while” – literally, “while something (A) happens, something else (B) interrupts A, therefore A doesn’t complete.)

Therefore, you can think of 다 못해 as literally meaning “while something happens or while something is a certain way, something else interrupts that, and it can no longer continue (못해 ‘can’t’).” So 참다못해 can become “while enduring, something interrupts the act of enduring, and (I) can no longer do it anymore (못해)... therefore...”

2) Also note that this form is most often 다 못해, but you might also come across 다 못한 (as an adjective) when it’s attached to an action verb and comes before a noun. This usage is much less common. It can be used this way when describing a noun, and has the same meaning.

3) And finally, with 생각(을) 하다 (“to think”), you can use either 생각하다 못해 or just 생각다 못해 – both are natural and correct.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 116: 반면에 “On the Other Hand”

반면에 is an intermediate level grammar form that can be used to show contrast – similar to the expression “on the other hand.” It can be used with verbs in both the present tense and the past tense.

Present Tense:

Action Verb Stem + 는 반면에)

Descriptive Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ 반면에)

This grammar form is similar to the expression “on the other hand.” It’s used to contrast two statements or sentences that are different from each other.

You can think of it as meaning “While **A** is true, on the other hand... **B**.” Or you can think of it as meaning “On one hand **A**, and on the other hand **B**.”

Literally, **반면** comes from Chinese characters (反面) and means “opposing side(s)” – therefore this form is literally like saying “on the opposing side of” the sentence that it’s used with.

To use it, take a verb (action verb or descriptive verb) and conjugate it into an adjective. Then attach **반면에)** and finish the sentence – while **에** is optional, it’s most often used.

For action verbs in the present tense, attach **는 반면에**. And for descriptive verbs in the present tense, attach **은 반면에** or **ㄴ 반면에** depending on the verb conjugation. Remember that certain descriptive verbs have their own unique conjugation rules; for example, **춡다** will become **추운 반면에**.

Here are two example sentences.

친구가 요리를 잘 하는 **반면에** 설거지를 못 해요.

My friend cooks well, but on the other hand he can’t do the dishes.

You can also think of this sentence as translating, "On one hand my friend cooks well, but on the other hand he can't do the dishes."

강아지가 너무 예쁜 **반면에** 털이 많이 빠져요.

The puppy is so pretty, but on the other hand she sheds a lot.

Saying 털(이) 빠지다 literally means that "fur comes off" and is how to say that something "sheds fur."

Past Tense:

Action Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ 반면(에)

Descriptive Verb Stem + 쓰던 반면(에)

For action verbs in the past tense, attach 은 반면에 or ㄴ 반면에. And for descriptive verbs in the past tense, attach 쓰던 반면에 after first conjugating the verb as usual; for example, 출다 will become 추웠던 반면에.

Here are some more example sentences using this grammar form.

철수와 영희가 같이 운동을 **한 반면에** 철수만 체중이 늘었어요.

Chul-soo and Yung-hee exercised together, but on the other hand only Chul-soo gained weight.

Note that 운동을 한 반면에 uses the past tense, so "exercised."

제레미는 게임을 많이 좋아하는 **반면에** 잘하는 게임이 없어요.

Jeremy likes games a lot, but on the other hand there's no game he's good at.

철수는 친구가 많은 **반면에** 철수의 동생은 친구가 한 명만 있어요.

Chul-soo has a lot of friends, but on the other hand his brother has only one friend.

Note that 많은 is the present tense, since 많다 ("to be many") is a descriptive verb.

그 음식점은 맛있었던 **반면에** 가격이 많이 비쌌어요.

That restaurant was delicious, but on the other hand the price was very expensive.

맛있다 ("to be delicious") becomes a past tense adjective as 맛있었던. To make the past tense using descriptive verbs, first conjugate the verb as normal (맛있어), then attach 쓰던 to the end (맛있었던).

철수는 목소리가 큰 **반면에** 말이 적어요.

Chul-soo has a loud voice, but on the other hand he doesn't talk much.

Literally, 말(이) 적다 means "to have few words."

서해 바다에는 갯벌이 많아요. **반면에** 동해 바다에는 절벽이 많아요.

The west coast beach has a lot of mud flats. On the other hand, the east coast beach has a lot of cliffs.

Just like in this example you can even use **반면에** by itself at the start of a sentence, as long as there's a context before **반면에** so it can show contrast.

Advanced Notes

Another similar form is **반해** ("opposing," "going against"). The **반해** form is used following the **은/ㄴ 데** form. This **은/ㄴ 데** form is made by first conjugating a verb (action or descriptive) to an adjective, and then adding a space. This **데** means "event" or "case" and is not the same as the **데** form which is used without a space and contrasts sentences.

For example, **하다** would become **하는 데 반해**, and **먹다** would become **먹는 데 반해**.

Therefore **하는 데 반해** would literally mean "opposing or going against the event/case of (verb)," whether that be an action verb or a descriptive verb. It's used in this way to mean "on the other hand," similarly to **반면에**, but with a few important differences.

Unlike **반면에**, **반해** must come after a verb (it can't start a sentence) and must be followed by a second statement. In addition, **반해** shows a stronger contrast than **반면에** and is only used when both statements are directly connected – not to say two separate facts that simply contrast each other. And finally, **반해** is less common than **반면에**.

Here's an example sentence.

그 한국어 수업이 아주 어려운 데 **반해** 학생들에게 인기가 많아요.

That Korean class is very difficult, but on the other hand it's popular with the students.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 117: Bring and Take

"Bring" and "take" can translate to several different verbs in Korean. For example, you might want to say "bring me those sunglasses," "bring this present with you to school," or "bring your older brother with you to the party." Each of these would use a different verb for "bring" (or "take").

"to take" = 가져가다

"to bring" = 가져오다

가져가다 and 가져오다 both come from the verb 가지다 ("to have") – 가지다 is used specifically when what you have is on your person (such as something in your pocket).

핸드폰을 가지고 있어요.

I have a cell phone.

가져가다 comes from 가지다 and 가다 ("to go"), and literally means "to have something on your person, and go somewhere else." Or more naturally, "to take."

우산을 가져가세요.

Bring an umbrella (with you).

Literally, the above example would mean "take an umbrella, and go."

가져오다 comes from 가지다 and 오다 ("to come"), and literally means "to have something on your person, and come here." Since it uses 오다, it's only used when the motion is coming toward the speaker.

지금 가져오세요.

Bring it (here) now.

“to not bring” = 안 가져오다

Saying that you didn't bring something (or take something somewhere) is a common way to say that you “forgot (to bring) something.”

아, 이런! 선물을 안 가져왔어요!

Dang it! I forgot the present!

Literally this just means that you didn't bring the present (here).

가져가다 = 가지고 가다

가져오다 = 가지고 오다

가지고 가다 and 가지고 오다 have the same meaning as 가져가다 and 가져오다, only a bit longer. Feel free to use either.

가지다 = 갖다

가져가다 = 가지고 가다 = 갖고 가다

가져오다 = 가지고 오다 = 갖고 오다

가지다 can also be shortened to just 갖다, so this means the combinations 갖고 가다 and 갖고 오다 are also possible (and common).

However, all of these verbs are only for taking and bringing *things* that are on your person.

In order to say “bring” or “take” with a person or an animal you'll need a different verb.

“to take” = 데려가다

“to bring” = 데려오다

For people and animals, use 데려가다 and 데려오다. These work the same way as 가져가다 and 가져오다.

친구를 데려갔어요.

I brought my friend (somewhere).

누가 학교에 고양이를 데려왔어요.

Someone brought a cat to school.

데려가다 = 데리고 가다

데려오다 = 데리고 오다

You can also use 데리고 가다 and 데리고 오다 in the same manner as 데려가다 and 데려오다. Either set is fine.

갖다 주다

갖다 드리다

갖다 주다 is another way to “bring” something, and is a combination of 갖다 (가지다) and 주다 (“to give”). It literally means “to get something, and give it to someone else.”

You can use 갖다 주다 whenever you’re bringing something to give to someone else.

연필을 갖다 주세요.

Bring me a pencil.

When using humble speech, 주다 can become 드리다 (“to give”).

선생님께 선물을 갖다 드렸어요.

I brought a present to the teacher.

Advanced Notes

When speaking with honorifics, you can also use 모시다 instead of 데리다 for *people* (not animals). This shows extra respect toward that person.

This will become 모셔가다 and 모셔오다, although you might also find 모시고 가다 and 모시고 오다.

If you're less comfortable using honorifics, you can think of these words as more formal versions of 데려가다 and 데려오다 – similar to saying “to escort someone.”

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 118: How to Say “My”

“My” is more than just one word in Korean – we’ll need several words to properly say “my.”

저의

나의

First, to say “my” we need to say “I” or “me” – use 저 or 나 depending on who you’re speaking to.

With close friends who are the same age as you or younger, use 나.

With everyone else, use 저.

Then attach the possessive marker 의 – this works like an apostrophe in English – directly after 저 or 나.

저의 and 나의 both mean “my.”

저의 손은 깨끗해요.

나의 손은 깨끗해.

My hands are clean.

Most often 저의 and 나의 are shortened in regular conversation to just 제 (저의) and 내 (나의).

제 손은 깨끗해요.

내 손은 깨끗해.

My hands are clean.

However, 저의 (제) and 나의 (내) should only be used when you’re talking about something that you actually own, or something that’s your property. They should not be used when talking about **people** (such as family members) or **animals** (such as pets).

Saying 저의 동생 (literally, “my younger sibling”) would sound like you were saying “my younger sibling and not yours,” and would be unnatural.

우리

To say "my" when talking about a person or an animal, use 우리 ("we," "us") instead.

우리 동생은 귀엽고 똑똑해요.

My younger sibling is cute and smart.

우리 강아지 너무 예쁘죠?

My dog is so pretty, huh?

In addition to 우리, you can also use 우리 집 ("our house") and 우리 학교 ("our school") – among other options – to emphasize that something belongs to your entire family or your entire school.

I recommend using 우리 집 (instead of just 우리) before pets, since it's more commonly used. This adds more emphasis that the pet belongs to your whole house (your family), and not only to you.

우리 집 고양이가 맨날 쓰레기를 먹어요.

My cat eats trash every day.

우리 집 원숭이 이름은 찰스예요.

My monkey's name is Charles.

저희

저희 is the humble version of 우리. Or, if you're not familiar with politeness levels such as humble speech, just know that 저희 is a more polite way to say 우리. It can be used in the same way as 우리, and pairs together with other polite speech endings.

저희 아버지도 거기서 일하고 계세요.

Our father is working there too.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 119: 채(로) “In the State Of”

Before we start the lesson, I want to give you a tip to understanding the meaning and usage of 채(로); as much as possible, try to focus on the *literal* meaning of the sentences used here. Understanding what this form literally means will help you to be able to use it accurately, and therefore naturally in your own sentences.

Action Verb Stem + 은/ㄴ 채(로)

채 means “just as it is, in its current state.” It’s used for describing the state of someone or something. Specifically, it’s used to describe the state of *action* (with an action verb) that someone or something is currently in.

For example, someone can be in the state of wearing glasses, or the state of lying down. Something could be in the state of being open or closed. This form can work with many action verbs.

You could say that you simply sat down, or you could say that you’re in the state of having sat down – the latter simply describes your current state (*you are seated right now*), while the former is only expressing an action that happens (*you sat down sometime in the past*).

To make this form, conjugate an action verb into the past tense adjective form. This will most often mean just taking an action verb stem and attaching 은 after a consonant or ㄴ after a vowel. Note that some verbs have their own conjugation rules, as usual. Then attach 채(로) – the 로 is *optional*.

하다 → 한 채(로)

먹다 → 먹은 채(로)

그분은 식탁 앞에 앉은 채로 잠들었어요.

He fell asleep (while) seated in front of the table.

Literally this sentence means “In the state of having sat in front of the table, he fell asleep.” Or more naturally, “He sat down in front of the table, and *in that state* he fell asleep.”

This form will often translate in English as “while” or “when,” but its meaning is different from other forms such as (으)면 and 동안, among others. The (으)면서 and 동안 forms show that two actions are happening at the same time as each other, but 채(로) is not doing that – 채(로) is simply describing something’s state and does not emphasize when something happens.

이 정도는 눈을 감은 채로도 할 수 있어요.

I can do this much with my eyes closed.

Literally this means “I can also do it in the state of, I closed my eyes.” Or more literally, “I closed my eyes, and also in that state I can do it.”

화장실 문을 열어 놓은 채로 샤워를 하면 너무 추워요.

It’s too cold if you take a shower with the door open.

머리를 말리지 않은 채로 밖에 나갔더니 감기에 걸렸어요.

I went outside without drying my hair and I caught a cold.

옆집 사람이 자꾸 셔츠를 안 입은 채로 쓰레기를 버리러 가요.

The next door neighbor keeps throwing out the garbage without a shirt on.

아무것도 모른 채로 살아갈 순 없어요.

You can’t go on living without knowing anything.

화장을 지우지 않은 채로 잠들었어요.

I fell asleep without taking off my makeup.

채(로) is most commonly used in writing and in formal speech – it's less common in casual or everyday speech. Instead, use other forms (such as the ~서 or ~고 endings) for casual and everyday speech. These forms do not work exactly like 채(로), so you will have to pick the most appropriate one based on the situation. When you want to express "with" or "without" doing an action, ~고 will be common. When you want to express that something happens right after doing something ("while"), ~서 will be common.

화장을 지우지 않고 잠들었어요.

I fell asleep without taking off my makeup.

Or literally, "I didn't take off my makeup, and (then) I fell asleep."

그분은 식탁 앞에 앉아서 잠들었어요.

He fell asleep (while) seated in front of the table.

Or literally, "He sat in front of the table, and (immediately) fell asleep."

Also one final thing. Note that ~가다 and ~오다 action verbs will not use 채(로) – this is because 채(로) is used to describe a state of action. 채(로) is not used to describe the state of something moving somewhere.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 120: 아/어/etc. 가다 & 오다

가다 ("to go") and 오다 ("to come") can have two different meanings when attached to conjugated action verbs. It can be used to show the direction of a motion, and it can also be used to show a continuing action.

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 가다

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 오다

To use the first form (beginner level), conjugate an action verb as usual and then instead of attaching 요, attach 가다 or 오다.

Conjugating an action verb followed by another action verb means "to do the first verb, then do the next verb." In this case with 가다 and 오다, it means "to do the first verb, then go somewhere else (가다) or come to where the speaker is (오다)."

For example, 걷다 ("to walk") is only used for walking *in general* – you can use this verb to say that you like walking in general.

저는 걷는 것을 좋아해요.

I like walking (in general).

빨리 걸었어요.

I walked fast.

The above example would mean just that you walked fast, and doesn't specify where you were going.

걸어가다 comes from 걷다 and 가다 and means "to walk somewhere else" Literally it means "to walk, and go somewhere (가다)."

학교까지 걸어갔어요.

I walked to school.

걸어오다 comes from 걷다 and 오다 and means "to walk here (to where the speaker is)." Literally it means "to walk, and come."

학교에서부터 걸어왔어요.

I walked here from school.

You'll see this form used all over the place, and there are too many verbs to cover in this single lesson. But here are just a few: 들어가다 and 들어오다 are used for entering places, 올라가다 and 올라오다 are used for getting on vehicles and going up the stairs, 돌아가다 and 돌아오다 are used when returning to somewhere else or to here, 가져가다 and 가져오다 are used for taking something, or bringing something somewhere, and 사 가다 and 사 오다 are used for buying something and going somewhere. 내려가다 and 내려오다 (from 내리다) are used when going up or down somewhere such as stairs, 찾아가다 and 찾아오다 (from 찾다) are used when you're going somewhere or coming to look for something, 데려가다 and 데려오다 (from 데리다) are used when taking or bringing someone somewhere, 씻어가다 and 씻어오다 (from 씻다) are used when washing something and going or coming, 집어가다 and 집어오다 (from 집다) are used when picking something up and going somewhere with it, 끌어가다 and 끌어오다 (from 끌다) are used when you're dragging or bringing someone somewhere, and... well, you get the idea.

One more example of this is 다니다 ("to attend," "to commute," "to go somewhere regularly"). 다녀오세요 (from 다니다 and 오다) is a common phrase that means "commute and come back" and is how you can say bye to someone who's going to work or school, and who'll come back later in the day. In this way, it's kind of like saying "Take care!"

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 가다

This form can have one additional (intermediate level) usage.

Using a conjugated action verb in this way with 가다 can show that an action continues on into the future. Note that there is a space added before attaching 가다 or 오다 in this form.

잘 하다 = "to do something well"

잘 해 가다 = "to do something well, and continue to do it well into the future"

동생이 유학 생활을 생각보다 잘 해 가고 있어요.

My younger sibling is living her exchange student lifestyle better than I thought.

Literally, the above sentence means that my younger sibling is *doing* their exchange student life better than I thought.

잘 되다 = "to go well"

잘 돼 가다 = "to go well, and continue to go well into the future"

일이 잘 돼 가나요?

Is your work going well?

Literally this is asking "Is your work going well, and will it continue to go well?" It implies that you're also asking whether it'll be okay in the future too.

거의 다 먹어 가고 있어요.

I'm almost finished eating.

남자 친구와 점점 닮아 가고 있어요.

I'm gradually getting more like my boyfriend.

집에만 있었더니 잠이 늘어 가고 있어요.

I'm only staying at home, and as a result I'm sleeping more.

Literally this example would mean that your sleep is increasing, and continues to increase.

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. 오다

Using this form with 오다 shows instead that the action, which started in the past, continues on from the past and still continues now.

살다 = "to live"

살아 오다 = "to live (in the past), and continue to live until now"

한국에서 5 살 때부터 살아 왔어요.

I've lived in Korea since I was five years old.

Literally this means that you lived in Korea in the past, and have continued to live in Korea since you were five, and still do live in Korea now.

대학교에 가면 남자 친구가 생길 거라고 믿어 왔어요.

I've believed (continually) that once I go to college I'll get a boyfriend.

3 년 전부터 봉사 활동부 부장으로 활동해 오고 있어요.

I've been (continually) working as the leader of the volunteering club from 3 years ago.

그 사람들은 특별한 물을 마시면 눈이 좋아진다고 속여 왔어요.

Those people have been fooling people, saying that if you drink the special water your vision will improve.

Three of the most common verbs used in this way are 하다, 살다, and 되다 – master these three first.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 121: “And then” ~서

There is more than one ~서 form. The most basic ~서 form is one used to mean “because,” and connects sentences that show a cause and effect. The ~서 form in this lesson is different, and is an intermediate level grammar form. This ~서 form conjugates the same way as the ~서 form which means “because,” but it has a different usage. Make sure to learn how to use ~서 to mean “because” before starting this lesson.

Action Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. + 서

Conjugate an **action verb** as usual, and attach 서.

After this form, finish the sentence using another **action verb**.

This form means that the second action (whatever comes after this ~서 form), happens immediately after the first action.

In this way, the ~서 form is used to show that these two actions are *related* to each other.

Let's compare the ~서 form with the ~고 form.

도서관에 가고 친구를 만났어요.

“I went to the library, and I met a friend.”

Using the ~고 form means that you simply did two things – going to the library and meeting a friend.

Perhaps you went to the library and studied, and then called a friend from the library, and met the friend outside.

Or perhaps you went to the library, and met a friend there.

Or perhaps you went to the library, then went to a café and met a friend.

The ~고 form does not specify where any of those actions happened, nor does it show that those actions are related in any way – it simply connects multiple actions, like using “and” in English.

Now let's look at that same sentence using the ~서 form instead.

도서관에 가서 친구를 만났어요.

"I went to the library, and I met a friend."

Although the English translation is the same, this sentence has a different meaning.

Since meeting a friend is now happening right after going to the library, these two actions are related.

This means that you went to the library, and met a friend there; you met a friend **at** the library.

Therefore, the ~서 form will not be used for making general lists of things that you did (or will do), since it shows that the actions are related to each other.

In fact, whenever the two actions are related (one happens right after the other), it will sound more natural to use ~서 instead of ~고.

Also, no matter the tense of the final action verb, this ~서 form only conjugates as normal.

This means that 가다 ("to go") should always become 가서 with this form (not 갔어서).

To change the tense of the sentence, simply change the tense of the final action verb.

Here are some more examples of this ~서 form.

집에 가서 밥을 먹었어요. "I went home and ate (a meal)."

Here, you're not just going home, and then leaving to go eat.

In this sentence, you're eating a meal at your house. This is because immediately after you go home, you eat a meal. So you must be also eating it at your house.

백화점에 가서 화장품을 샀어요.

"I went to the department store and bought makeup."

This means that you bought makeup at the department store, not just that you went to the department store and bought makeup (perhaps somewhere else).

친구를 만나서 얘기했어요.

"I met my friend and talked."

Here, you're meeting a friend and talking with them – not just meeting a friend and talking with someone else.

케이크를 만들어서 선생님께 드렸어요.

"I made a cake and gave it to the teacher."

In this sentence we're making a cake, and then giving that very cake to the teacher.

To summarize, this ~서 form is used to show that two actions are related to each other.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 122: ~까 봐 “Worrying”

This lesson will cover the intermediate grammar form ~까 봐, which is used to express that you're worried about something.

Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) + 까 봐

This form is conjugated the same as the regular ~까 form, with 봐 added to the end.

Take a verb stem and attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or attach ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*.

This verb stem can be in the present tense or past tense (하다 can become 할까 or 했을까).

Then follow this form with 봐 (from the verb 보다 “to see”).

You might also find other conjugations of this verb, such as 보네(요),봐(요), 봐서, etc., depending on how it's being used.

This form is used whenever you want to **explain** that the reason you did (or do) something is because you were **worried**.

You can think of this form as meaning “because I was/am worried...”

For example, using this form you could say “I don't even want to use my new cell phone *because I'm worried* it'll get scratched.”

This form is used in the middle of a sentence – the reason will come first, followed by this form, and then what you did out of worry.

This form can also be followed by verbs that show worrying, such as 걱정(을) 하다 [“to worry”] and others.

Alternatively, you can also use this form at the end of a sentence by itself; just use 봐요 when speaking politely.

Let's look at some example sentences.

음식이 맛이 없을까 봐 걱정했어요.

"I was worried the food wouldn't taste good."

Literally, you can think of this sentence as meaning "I'm worried, out of worry that the food won't taste good."

시험에 떨어질까 봐 열심히 공부했어요.

"I studied hard because I was worried I'd fail the test."

마크가 매운 음식을 못 먹을까 봐 햄버거를 사 줬어요.

"I bought Mark a hamburger because I was worried he wouldn't be able to eat spicy food."

새로 산 핸드폰에 기스가 날까 봐 쓰고 싶지도 않아요.

"I don't even want to use my new cell phone because I'm worried it'll get scratched."

Advanced Notes

This ~까 봐 form has one more usage. It can also be used to express that the speaker (you) is thinking of doing something, but isn't sure.

This is because you can also think of it as a combination of ~까(요), meaning "Shall I/you...."

In this way, it can also translate as "I'm thinking about (doing action verb)...."

내일 갈까 봐.

"I'm thinking about going."

This ~까 봐 form is interchangeable with the ~까 생각하다 or ~까 하다 form, which also means that you're thinking about doing something.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 123: ~아/어/etc. 하다 & 싶어 하다

This grammar form is an intermediate level concept. Before starting this lesson, make sure you first have a comfortable understanding of the ~고 싶다 grammar form.

Action Verb Stem + 고 싶어 하다

Before we learn the entire form, let's look at one of its most common uses.

Take the stem of an action verb and attach 고, followed by 싶어 하다.

This form looks a lot like the ~고 싶다 form, but there are some differences.

The regular ~고 싶다 form can be used to say that "I" or "you" want to do something.

가고 싶어요.

"I want to go."

However, there is an important exception to keep in mind when using the ~고 싶다 form.

The ~고 싶다 form cannot be used when speaking in the 3rd person. Here is a quick review of this.

1st person: "I," "me"

2nd person: "you"

3rd person: "he," "she," "they," "Chul-soo," "another person," etc.

This means that the ~고 싶다 form cannot be used to say that "he" or "she" or "they" or anyone else wants to do something – instead the ~고 싶어 하다 form should be used.

This means that the following sentence is *incorrect*.

철수는 가고 싶어요.

"Chul-soo wants to go."

Although this makes sense, it is not the correct way to speak. Instead, use the ~고 싶어 하다 form.

철수는 가고 싶어 해요.

"Chul-soo wants to go."

Why? In Korean it's thought that you can never know 100% what a 3rd person wants or feels.

Using ~고 싶다 means that you are 100% sure (or simply directly asking someone) that someone wants to do something. When used with a 3rd person, it would mean that you were 100% sure of that person's wants.

However, unless you had a way to know 100% what another person wants, then you should use ~고 싶어 하다 to express what that person wants to do.

Of course, if you do know 100% what a 3rd person wants or feels, you're free to use ~고 싶다. For example, this would be fine if you're an author of a book, and the 3rd person is a character in your story.

This applies to any grammar form that shows what someone else wants or feels, including (으)려고 하다 and (을/르)래요. Those forms can also only be used in the 1st and 2nd person.

Next let's look at how else this form can be used.

Descriptive Verb Stem + 아/어/etc. + 하다

Conjugate a descriptive verb as normal, and attach 하다.

The form ~고 싶어 하다 originally comes from this construction (싶다 → 싶어 하다).

Note that although there is no space before 하다 in this form, ~고 싶어 하다 is an exception and uses a space.

You can use this form to talk about a 3rd person's wants or feelings – even if you are not 100% sure of them.

For example, you can say that you're sad (1st person or 2nd person) with the verb 슬프다.

However, if you wanted to say that someone else is sad (3rd person), use the verb 슬퍼하다.

철수는 슬퍼해요.

"Chulsoo is sad."

By using this form (which uses 하다 meaning "to do"), it changes the descriptive verb into an **action verb**.

Literally, this form means "to do (descriptive verb)," but you can think of it like meaning "to feel (descriptive verb)," "to seem sad," or "to behave outwardly as if (descriptive verb)."

Therefore, you can think of 슬퍼하다 as meaning "to be sad," "to feel sad," or "to act sad."

That is how this form can be used to make assumptions about a 3rd person's wants or feelings.

Let's look at a few example sentences.

마크 씨도 김치를 먹어 보고 싶어 해요.

"Mark also wants to try (eating) kimchi."

잭슨 씨가 많이 기뻐해요.

"Jackson is very happy."

아이는 무서워했어요.

"The child was afraid."

In addition, because this form changes a descriptive verb into an action verb, the resulting verb can also be used in a few new ways.

For example, this new action verb can be used in the Progressive Tense (~고 있다).

지민 씨는 힘들어 하고 있어요.

"Ji-min is having a hard time."

힘들다 means "to be difficult" or "to have trouble."

Or, this new action verb can even be used to make a negative command (~지 말다).

슬퍼하지 마세요.

"Don't be sad."

It would be incorrect to use 슬프다 to make a negative command, since it is a descriptive verb. However, 슬퍼하다 is technically an action verb.

In addition, although this form can be used in the 3rd person, it's also okay to use it in the 1st person or 2nd person. This usage is much less common, but makes sense.

Advanced Notes

Note about ~고 싶다: The regular ~고 싶다 form should only be used when you are 100% sure of what someone else wants to do. However, there is another case where you could use this form. For example, if you directly asked 철수 if he wants to eat pizza, he might reply 네, 피자를 먹고 싶어요. Then, you can be 100% sure he wants to do that, so you could tell another friend that 철수 씨는 피자를 먹고 싶어요. In this case, you can be 100% sure.

Note about 좋다 and 싫다: The common action verbs 좋아하다 ("to like") and 싫어하다 ("to dislike") originally come from this same form.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 124: ~커녕 “Let alone”

This grammar form is advanced level, so I recommend learning it after you have a good understanding of the basics including conjugating verbs, using adverbs, and making full conversations.

Noun + (은/는) + 커녕

Take a noun and attach 은 if it ends in a *consonant*, or 는 if it ends in a *vowel*. Then attach 커녕. There are no spaces.

For example, 집 will become 집은커녕, and 학교 will become 학교는커녕.

Let's look at this form using A and B, with A being the noun and B being whatever comes after this form.

A (은/는)커녕 B

Both A and B have a low chance of happening.

B is something even more basic than A, and has a very low chance of happening.

Also, the noun that comes after it (B) is even more basic than A, and has an even lower chance of happening.

This form is used to express that both A and B will not likely, but B is even more basic than A and won't happen either.

Therefore, because B (something basic) won't happen, A definitely will not happen.

In English, we can express the same sort of thing with the expression “**let alone**” or “**forget**” or “**never mind (that)**.”

This is most often used in negative sentences, but does not have to be.

This form can also be used with action verbs using the nominalization form ~기.

Action Verb Stem + 기는커녕

Take the stem of an action verb and attach 기는커녕. The rest works the same.

Let's look at some example sentences using the (은/는)커녕 form.

소 갈비는커녕 빵 사먹을 돈도 없어요.

"Forget beef ribs. I don't even have the money to buy bread."

도움이 되기는커녕 방해만 된 것 같아 죄송해요.

"I'm sorry because I think I was only a disturbance, let alone being helpful."

사람은커녕 개미 한 마리도 안 보인다.

"I can't even see one ant, let alone a person."

이 성적이면 취업은커녕 졸업도 힘들 것 같네요.

"Forget finding a job. With these grades I think even graduating will be difficult."

한자는커녕 한글도 잘 못 써요.

"Forget Hanja. I can't even write Hangul."

Advanced Notes

This form is often used together with the adverb 오히려 ("on the contrary," "contrary to what you thought/expect"), as well as the particle조차 ("even").

This form is interchangeable with the form ~(은/는)고사하고 [with nouns] or ~기는고사하고 [with action verbs] – however, ~(은/는)커녕 and ~기는커녕 are much more commonly used.

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 125: Saying "Each" Using 에 & 씩

The particle 에 and 씩 are often used together to mean "each." Let's talk about each of them in detail.

Noun + 에

The particle 에 (in addition to being used to mean "to/at/in" a location) can also be used after a noun to mean "each," or "per," or "a."

For example, to say "I eat ten grapefruits *each* day" or "ten grapefruits *per* day" or "ten grapefruits *a* day."

However you translate it in English is up to you, but it can be used in this way after any sort of countable noun – not only *things* like grapefruits, but also *time*, or *money*.

하루에 2 시간 공부해요.

"I study 2 hours each/per/a day."

아보카도는 두 개에 3 천 원이에요.

"It's 3,000 Won for 2 avocados."

In this sentence above, translating it as "each" or "per" or "a" don't really fit, since it's for *two* avocados. So literally, "each two avocados," if it helps to think of it like this.

You can even flip the sentence around, and put the amount first, and get a similar meaning. For example, instead of saying "3,000 Won for 2 avocados, you could say this.

아보카도는 3 천 원에 두 개를 살 수 있어요.

"You can buy two avocados for 3,000 Won."

So when the particle 에 is used like this, "for" will also sometimes be a good way to translate it.

Just keep in mind that how you translate this is up to you, and that the meaning in Korean doesn't change. Here's one more example.

한 번에 천 원입니다.

"It's 1,000 Won each time."

Or literally the above sentence can also be "It's 1,000 Won for one time."

Counter Noun + 씩

씩 is often used together with the particle 에. It can also attach onto the end of a word – usually this will be a *counter word* (for example, 시간 "hour," 개 for objects or things, 명 "person," et cetera).

씩 will often attach onto the end of whatever counter word is used together with the particle 에. This means you'll often find sentences that use 에 after a noun, followed by a counter noun somewhere in the sentence that ends with 씩.

씩 also means "each." And it's *usually* optional.

Attaching 씩 onto the end of a counter word adds *emphasis* to the meaning of "each" in the sentence.

Although it's optional, I recommend it whenever possible because it really makes the meaning of "each" stronger and therefore clearer.

To better understand why, remember that the particle **에** is already used for other things in Korean (such as "to/at/in" a location), so to make it really clear that you mean "each," and not something else I recommend attaching **씩** whenever possible.

For example, here's one of our sentences from earlier, with **씩** added.

하루에 2 시간씩 공부해요.

"I study 2 hours each day."

Attaching **씩** *emphasizes* that meaning of "each." So instead of just "2 hours a day," it feels more like "2 hours each and *every* day." The overall meaning is still the same as before, but the nuance changes.

Here are a few more examples.

30 분에 한 번씩 손을 씻으세요.

"Wash your hands once each 30 minutes."

While this sentence would also work without **씩**, adding it makes it clear you mean *every* 30 minutes.

일주일에 책을 몇 권씩 읽으세요?

"How many books do you read each week?"

고등어를 이렇게 3 개씩 팔아요.

"We sell mackerel like this, 3 each."

Using **씩** Without **에**

씩 can also be used in sentences that do not use the particle **에**, and still mean "each."

When you do this, **씩** still adds the meaning of "each" or "every," although without specifying how often or what it's for (which is what the particle **에** would specify). Here's a quick example.

만 원씩이에요.

"They're 10,000 Won each."

You can also do this after an amount of time. When doing this, what **씩** does is adds the feeling that something is happening *multiple times* over some period of time. The specific amount of time is unknown without adding **에**.

이 약은 다섯 개씩 먹어야 돼요.

"I have to take five of this medicine."

Here in this sentence above, we can assume that it's five, every time they take it – so they're taking five, multiple times over some unknown period of time.

저는 한 번씩 피부과에 가요.

"I go to the dermatologist every one time?"

Remember that the action is happening multiple times over some period of time, so you can instead translate this as "I go to the dermatologist *every once in a while*."

In summary, you can attach **씩** after a counter noun to add the meaning of "each."

조금씩 & 가끔씩

You might also see **씩** attached onto certain *adverbs*, like **조금** or **가끔**. This adds more emphasis to these words, like attaching the feeling of "each" to their meaning. You can simply memorize these two words as-is.

조금 means "a little" and **조금씩** means "little by little" or "gradually."

조금씩 배우고 있어요.

"I'm learning little by little."

This meaning is different than without using **씩**.

조금 배우고 있어요.

"I'm learning a little."

가끔 means "sometimes," and 가끔씩 means "sometimes (but not often)."

영화는 가끔씩 봐요.

"I watch movies sometimes."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 126: ~기는 하다 & ~기도 하다

The ~기 verb ending (which can be used with both Action Verbs and Descriptive Verbs) is commonly used with various grammar forms. For a quick example of our form today, if you want to say that you like kimchi, you could say this:

김치를 좋아해요.

"I like kimchi."

We can add the ~기 verb ending to this verb (좋아하다), along with the Topic Marker 는, which by itself can add emphasis, in order to add emphasis to that *verb* (e.g. "I *do* like kimchi.").

김치를 좋아하는는 해요.

"I *do* like kimchi."

While the overall meaning of these two sentences is the same, this one using the ~기는 ending emphasizes the verb (좋아하다), and also adds more *contrast* to the sentence. For example...

김치를 좋아하는는 하지만 만들 수는 없어요.

"I *do like* kimchi, but I can't *make* it."

The ~기 verb ending has a few uses like this, and we'll cover the most common ones in this lesson.

Verb Stem + 기는 하다

To use this form, take a verb stem and attach 기, followed by 는. This can also be further shortened to 낀 in everyday conversations. Then add the verb 하다 and conjugate it. No other tenses are used to make this form.

하다 → 하기는 or 하낀

먹다 → 먹기는 or 먹낀

This form is used to emphasize the verb, and adds contrast to the sentence. You can think of this feeling as if the speaker is *admitting* something to the listener, but perhaps not fully admitting it and are still holding back some information. Here are two examples in English.

"I like kimchi." **vs** "I *like* kimchi."

"The weather is cold." **vs** "The weather *is* cold."

Because of this feeling, the ~기는 하다 form is commonly used to show contrast. The speaker is admitting something, but this implies there might be something else to the story. This adds contrast to the sentence. Here's an example.

맛있기는 하지만 비싸요.

"It *does* taste good (I'll admit), but it's expensive."

The *literal* meaning of this form is simply the regular ~기 ending, which transforms a verb into a noun, combined with the Topic Marker 는. For example, 맛있기 (from 맛있다) means "being delicious/tasty," and 맛있기는 literally means "As for being delicious/tasty...." The 하다 at the end can be thought of as simply meaning "it is" or "it does" or "they are," depending on the verb that's being used. So we can look at this sentence literally as meaning, "As for being delicious/tasty, it is (I'll admit), but it's expensive." Here are two more examples.

한국 사람이긴 하지만 매운 음식을 잘 못 먹어요.

"Although they *are* a Korean, they can't eat spicy food well."

한국에 관심이 있긴 한데 아직 한국에 안 가봤어요.

"I *am* interested in Korea, but I haven't been to Korea yet."

Verb Stem + 기도 하다

To use this form, take a verb stem and attach 기, followed by the particle 도 meaning "even" or "also." Then add the verb 하다 and conjugate it.

This form works in the same exact way as *기는*, only its meaning is different because instead of adding emphasis, it shows that a verb *also*, or *even* is, or also or even happens. Just like the *~기는* form, it can be used with both Action Verbs and Descriptive Verbs. Here are two examples.

제가 한국어 선생님이예요.

"I am a Korean teacher."

제가 한국어 선생님이기도 해요.

"I also am a Korean teacher."

In this sentence, we're not just saying "I too, among other people, am also a Korean teacher." We could do that simply by saying *저도*, and not this form. Here, we're saying that "In addition to other things that I am, I *also am* a Korean teacher." Here's another example.

저는 요리를 잘해요.

"I cook well."

저는 요리를 잘하기도 해요.

"I also cook well."

Again, in this sentence we're not saying that other people cook well, and I cook well too – we could do that using *저도*. This sentence means that I can *cook* well, in addition to other things. For example, "not only am I a Korean teacher, but I can also cook well." Just a little humble brag, and back to the lesson.

Here's another example of how this form is different than just the regular particle *도*.

철수 씨도 똑똑해요.

"Chul-soo is also smart (in addition to other people who are smart)."

철수 씨는 똑똑하기도 해요.

"Chul-soo is also smart (in addition to his other many talents)."

And here's one more example.

저는 심심할 때 드라마를 보기도 해요.

"When I'm bored, I also watch dramas (in addition to doing other things)."

ADVANCED NOTES

You might also find the form ~기는 (or ~긴) used at the end of a sentence without the verb 하다. While the literal meaning is the same as before, this form has a different usage.

Verb Stem + 기는(요)

To use this form, take a verb stem and attach ~기는 like before (or ~긴), followed by 요. The 요 at the end can be removed when speaking casually. This form is used to express that you disagree with what someone has told you. It's used at the end of a sentence on its own. To use it, repeat the same verb that the other person used, attaching this form. Most often this form will be used simply with one verb on its own, and not after a full sentence (e.g. 답기는요, not 날씨가 답기는요).

잘하기는요. 아직 배우고 있어요.

"What? I'm not good. I'm still learning."

덥긴. 오늘 아침은 추웠는데?

"What? It's not hot. This morning was cold."

하긴

Note that this form is different than the single word 하긴 (originally from 하기는), which is used at the beginning of a sentence and means "now that I think about it" when the speaker is considering something.

하긴, 좀 맵긴 하지.

"Now that I think about it, it is a bit spicy, huh."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 127: 뿐이다 & 따름이다 “Only”

There are many ways to translate “only” depending on the context, as well as many ways to use each of them. Before starting this lesson, make sure you’re already familiar with using the particles **만** and **밖에**.

Noun + 뿐이다

To make this form, attach **뿐** directly after a noun (without a space), and then conjugate **이다**.

This form **뿐이다** is used to add more *emphasis* to the meaning of “only” after a noun. You can think of **뿐이다** in this way as meaning “To be nothing but (noun).”

Note that you wouldn’t simply emphasize a short sentence that only contained one noun and **뿐**; there should be a real reason why you’re emphasizing something within a sentence – so think longer sentences, and not shorter ones when using this form. Here’s an example.

필통에 있는 건 지우개뿐이에요.

“The only thing at all that’s in my pencil case is an eraser.”

Simply saying 지우개뿐이에요, while grammatically correct, sounds awkward by itself. This is because there’s no reason to be emphasizing the eraser on its own.

Here are two more examples.

우리에게 남은 것은 시간뿐이에요.

“The only thing that we have left is time, and nothing else.”

숙제를 다 한 건 철수뿐이었어요.

“It was only Chul-soo, and nobody else, who did all of the homework.”

Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 뿐이다

To make this form, take a verb stem and attach 을 if it ends in a *consonant*, or ㄹ if it ends in a *vowel*. Remember that some verbs also have different conjugation rules (e.g. 살다 will become 살). This verb stem can also be in the past tense (e.g. 하다 can become 할 or 했을). Finally add a space followed by 뿐, and conjugate 이다.

This form 뿐이다 is also used to add more *emphasis* to the meaning of "only" in the sentence; you can think of this meaning as similar to the feeling of the adverb 그냥, meaning "just" or "only." By using the form 뿐이다, the speaker is saying that there's only one *option* to choose from (Action Verbs), or only one way *to be* (Descriptive Verbs).

그저 기다릴 뿐이다.

"All I do is wait (and nothing else)."

그저 ("only") is an adverb, and means that you're not doing anything else, except only whatever verb that comes after it.

저는 들은 대로 말했을 뿐이에요.

"All I said was just what I had heard."

잠을 못 자서 피곤할 뿐이에요.

"I couldn't sleep, so all I am is tired."

In addition, sentences using this 뿐이다 form can also use the particle 만 (after a noun) to add even more emphasis. Here's just one example.

손님이 몇 명이 올지 대략적으로만 알 뿐이에요.

"All I have is just a rough guess of how many customers will come (here)."

There's one more thing you should know about this form when it's used with the verb 이다. This will become 일 뿐이다, and is attached directly after a noun.

우리는 친구일 뿐이에요.

"We are *only* friends."

일 뿐이다 can be used in a *negative* way, almost as if you're complaining about something being nothing more than a noun. It's similar to saying 그냥 before the noun. 그냥 친구예요 ("We're just friends, and not a couple or anything else besides friends.").

So if you wanted to say that a noun is "only" something, and you don't want it to sound negative or like you're complaining about it, just use 뿐이다 instead, or even just use the adverb 그냥. Here's an example.

내가 원하는 게 너뿐이야.

"All that I want is you (and no one else)."

Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 따름이다

To use this form, take a verb stem and attach 을 or ㄹ as usual. Then add 따름, and conjugate 이다.

The 따름이다 form has the same meaning and usage as 뿐이다, but sounds more formal – and is therefore less commonly used.

In addition, while the literal meaning and usage of this form is the same as 뿐이다, it tends to get used in formal situations where the speaker is expressing their emotions about something (including hope, regret, surprise, etc.). For example, you might express something like "I only feel grateful/sorry" (e.g. 감사할 따름입니다).

Besides this, it is interchangeable in any sentence with 뿐이다 when used with a verb.

이걸 혼자 다 했다니 놀라울 따름이네요.

"I have nothing but surprise to find out that you did all of this by yourself."

ADVANCED NOTES

오직

오직 can also optionally be added to a sentence (along with the particle 만) to add further emphasis to a sentence that contains the meaning of "only." This adds emphasis to the meaning of "only" right in the beginning of the sentence (before using another form such as 뿐이다 or 따름이다), and means "solely" or "only one (and no other)."

이건 오직 철수 씨만이 할 수 있는 일입니다.

"This is something that only Chul-soo and no one else can do."

In addition, you might find 뿐 used on its own without 이다. This can happen in the middle of a sentence (when a thought is incomplete), but not at the end of a sentence. The meaning of this form is the same, without the "to be" meaning that 이다 adds. Keep an eye open for it, but know that it will still use 이다 at the end of a sentence.

이름만 알 뿐, 아무것도 몰라요.

"I don't know anything besides only their name."

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 128: 통해(서) "Through"

The grammar form we'll learn about in this lesson is 통해(서), which is an intermediate level grammar form and means "through" – both literally and figuratively.

통해(서) comes from the Action Verb 통하다, meaning "to go through" or "to pass through."

통해(서) therefore literally means "going through" or "passing through" whatever noun it's used after.

Noun + [을/를] 통해(서)

To use it, attach the Object Marker after a noun – whatever it is that you're going or passing through – and then add 통해(서).

Note that the 서 in 통해(서) is optional – it can be used as 통해서 or 통해.

In English, "through" can have several different uses.

- You can learn something "through" something else...
- You can go "through" a tunnel...
- You can meet someone "through" a person...

통해(서) can be used for any of these meanings, whether that's a *literal* or *figurative* meaning.

Let's look at some examples.

저는 책을 통해서 한국어를 배웠어요.

"I learned Korean through a book."

새가 창문을 통해서 날아 들어왔어요.

"The bird flew in through the window."

캠핑을 통해서 새로운 걸 많이 배웠어요.

"I learned many new things through camping."

학교 친구를 통해서 그것에 대해 들었어요.

"I heard about that through a school friend."

Note that while 통해(서) means "through," it's often not the most commonly used expression.

This is because 통해(서) has a bit of a formal sound, and is less commonly used in everyday conversations. While it's useful to know, and is used, it might be better to use different forms instead for regular conversations (such as with friends and acquaintances).

For example, instead of saying "I learned it through a book," you could say "I learned it using a book."

This can be done using the particle (으)로, which means "using."

책을 통해서 → 책으로

Or, instead of saying "I heard it through a friend," you could say "I heard it from a friend."

This can be done using the particle 에게(서) or 한테(서), which mean "from."

친구를 통해서 → 친구한테

For more information, check out my channel for additional lessons which go more in-depth about these forms and more.

Advanced Notes

Action Verb Stem + (음/ㅁ) + 으로서

Instead of a noun, you can also express "through" by using a verb.

For example, you can say "through" *doing* or "by way of" *doing* something.

To use this form, attach **음** after an Action Verb stem that ends with a consonant, or attach **ㅁ** if the stem ends with a vowel. Then attach **으로써**, and finish the sentence.

Note that this form **으로써** cannot be used to mean *physically* going "through" something – it can only be used to mean "through" *doing* something.

Like **통해(서)**, **으로써** sounds a bit formal, more like a *written* style. As a result, **으로써** is less commonly used.

책을 읽음으로써 한국 역사를 배웠어요.

"I learned Korean history through reading books."

*Also for one note, since this form uses the (음/ㅁ) ending, that means that this form is technically using **으로써** directly after a noun. However, Noun + **으로써** is not commonly used – instead, simply use **통해(서)** when using a noun.*

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!



Learn Korean Ep. 129: ~군, ~구나, ~구먼 “Oh my!”

In this lesson you'll learn several forms that all have the same overall usage – to mean that you've just *realized* something.

The forms that you'll learn are ~군(요), ~구나, ~구먼(요), and ~구만.

Descriptive Verb Stem + 군(요)

Action Verb Stem + 는군(요)

The way to use ~군(요) will depend on whether you're using a Descriptive Verb or an Action Verb.

For Descriptive Verbs, take the stem and attach ~군, or ~군요 when speaking politely.

For Action Verbs, take the stem and attach 는군 or 는군요.

Note that the 는 is only attached when using Action Verbs, and also only when the Action Verb is used in the Present Tense.

For all other tenses, simply use ~군(요) regardless of the type of verb.

Also note that if the Action Verb stem ends with ㄹ, remove it before attaching 는 (this is the same thing that happens when using any grammar form that starts with ㄴ).

답다 → 답군(요)

하다 → 하는군(요)

Again, this form is used to show that you've realized something – whether you personally experienced it, or for just something that you realized because you heard it.

Since this form shows that you've realized something, you can translate it in the following ways:

- “Oh...”
- “I see...”
- “So (then)...”
- “I didn't realize...”

그렇군요.

"Oh, I see."

맛있군요.

"I see (that) it tastes good."

원숭이도 나무에서 떨어지는군요.

"So monkeys do fall from trees."

This expression is used to mean that even a master can make mistakes.

Descriptive Verb Stem + 구나

Action Verb Stem + 는구나

The form ~구나 is used in the same way as ~군(요), but without the 요 – it also has the same meaning as 군.

Again, only add the 는 when using an Action Verb stem that's in the present tense.

Note that since there is no 요 at the end, ~구나 is only used in casual speech – such as in regular conversations with your close friends.

In addition, ~구나 is more commonly used than ~군(요) when it can be. Therefore I recommend using ~구나 instead of ~군 whenever you're speaking casually.

그렇구나!

"Oh, I see!"

드디어 눈이 오는구나!

"Oh, it's finally snowing!"

영희도 많이 바쁘구나.

"Oh, I see Yung-hee is also very busy."

Descriptive Verb Stem + 구먼(요)

Action Verb Stem + 는구먼(요)

For beginners, ~군(요) and ~구나 are the most standard ways to express that you've realized something. But there are also two more ways you might hear, which are more for intermediate level learners.

~구먼 is an older style version of ~군 – in fact, ~군 originally comes from ~구먼.

The usage is the same as ~군(요) or ~구나.

Note that 구먼 is casual speech, but you might also see 구먼요 for more polite speech.

However, since ~구먼(요) is an older style of ~군(요), it is not commonly used nowadays.

You may occasionally see it in novels, or used among older Koreans.

그렇구먼!

"Oh, I see!"

Descriptive Verb Stem + 구만

Action Verb Stem + 는구만

Technically ~구만 is an incorrect version of ~구먼; it should be avoided when writing essays, news articles, or when you want to show that you have a perfect understanding of Korean grammar.

However, ~구만 is more commonly used than ~구먼, and you might encounter it often.

In addition, ~구만 can have a more playful and casual feel, and can almost sound sarcastic at times.

Note that if you're going to use ~구만, only use ~구만 – don't use ~구만요, which sounds like a dialect.

그렇구만!

"Oh, I see!"

Advanced Notes

~더군(요) & Using 더

You may also see some of these forms combined with 더.

더 appears in many grammar forms, and means something that happened in the Past Tense, and something that you personally have experienced or heard – it's used for conveying your own experiences from the past.

You may find 더 used in verb endings such as ~더군(요), ~더구나, ~더구먼, or ~더구만.

These are used to express something that you realized, but that happened in the past, and that you have personal experience with (you experienced or heard about it personally).

Conclusion

If you have any questions, feel free to send me a message through my web site or on YouTube. Good luck in your studies!

